Microsoft Office Access 2007

INSIDE OUT

CD INCLUDES:
- Sample database applications
- References for the new interface
- eBook, bonus chapters, and more!

- The ultimate, in-depth reference
- Hundreds of timesaving solutions
- Supremely organized book and CD

John L. Viescas
Popular Access author and Microsoft MVP

Jeff Conrad
Software design engineer for Access and Microsoft MVP
Dedication

For Suzanne, as always . . .

— John Viescas

For the love of my life, Cheryl. Without your love, support, and patience, I would not have been able to complete this project. Thank you for always believing in me. And for Amy, Aaron, and Arica. Thank you for understanding why Daddy could not play very much for a long time. And thank you John for taking a chance and giving an untested, slightly crazy, Access Junkie the opportunity of a lifetime.

— Jeff Conrad
Part 1: Understanding Microsoft Access

Chapter 1
What Is Microsoft Access? 3
Chapter 2
Exploring the New Look of Access 2007 19
Chapter 3
Microsoft Office Access 2007 Overview 99

Part 2: Building an Access 2007 Desktop Application

Chapter 4
Creating Your Database and Tables 141
Chapter 5
Modifying Your Table Design 203
Chapter 6
Importing and Linking Data 253
Chapter 7
Creating and Working with Simple Queries 347
Chapter 8
Building Complex Queries 413
Chapter 9
Modifying Data with Action Queries 485

Part 3: Creating Forms and Reports in a Desktop Application

Chapter 10
Using Forms 517
Chapter 11
Building a Form 559

Chapter 12
Customizing a Form 609
Chapter 13
Advanced Form Design 685
Chapter 14
Using Reports 735
Chapter 15
Constructing a Report 757
Chapter 16
Advanced Report Design 811

Part 4: Automating an Access Application

Chapter 17
Understanding Event Processing 867
Chapter 18
Automating Your Application with Macros 887
Chapter 19
Understanding Visual Basic Fundamentals 941
Chapter 20
Automating Your Application with Visual Basic 1051

Part 5: Linking Access and the Web

Chapter 21
Publishing Data on the Web 1127
Chapter 22
Working with Windows SharePoint Services 1165
Chapter 23
Using XML 1235
### Part 6: After Completing Your Application

- **Chapter 24**  
  The Finishing Touches. 1283
- **Chapter 25**  
  Distributing Your Application 1319

#### Appendix
- Installing Your Software 1341

#### Bonus Content on the Companion CD

### Part 7: Designing an Access Project

- **Chapter 26**  
  Building Tables in an Access Project 1449
- **Chapter 27**  
  Building Queries in an Access Project 1493
- **Chapter 28**  
  Designing Forms in an Access Project 1549
- **Chapter 29**  
  Building Reports in an Access Project 1569

### Part 8: Articles

- **Article 1**  
  Designing Your Database Application A3
- **Article 2**  
  Understanding SQL A33
- **Article 3**  
  Exporting Data A79
- **Article 4**  
  Function Reference A85
- **Article 5**  
  Color Names and Codes A93
- **Article 6**  
  Macro Actions A101
# Table of Contents

Acknowledgments ................................................................. xxv
About the CD ........................................................................ xxxvii
   What’s on the CD ................................................................. xxvii
   Sample Applications .......................................................... xxviii
   System Requirements ......................................................... xxix
   Errata & Book Support ....................................................... xxix
Conventions and Features Used in This Book ......................... xxxi
   Text Conventions ............................................................... xxxi
   Design Conventions ........................................................... xxxi
   Syntax Conventions ........................................................... xxxiii
Introduction ............................................................................. xxxv
Getting Familiar with Access 2007 ......................................... xxxv
About This Book ...................................................................... xxxv

## Part 1: Understanding Microsoft Access .......................... 1

### Chapter 1: What Is Microsoft Access? ......................... 3
   What Is a Database? ............................................................ 4
   Relational Databases .......................................................... 4
   Database Capabilities .......................................................... 5
Access as an RDBMS .............................................................. 6
   Data Definition and Storage ................................................... 6
   Data Manipulation ................................................................ 9
   Data Control ......................................................................... 12
Access as an Application Development System ..................... 13
Deciding to Move to Database Software .................................. 15

What do you think of this book? We want to hear from you!

Microsoft is interested in hearing your feedback so we can continually improve our books and learning resources for you. To participate in a brief online survey, please visit:

www.microsoft.com/learning/booksurvey/
# Table of Contents

## Chapter 2: Exploring the New Look of Access 2007
- Opening Access for the First Time .................................................. 19
- Getting Started—A New Look for Access ........................................ 21
  - Opening an Existing Database ................................................. 22
  - Exploring the Microsoft Office Button .................................... 25
  - Taking Advantage of the Quick Access Toolbar ......................... 27
- Understanding Content Security .................................................... 34
  - Temporarily Enabling a Database That Is Not Trusted ................. 35
  - Understanding the Trust Center .............................................. 36
  - Enabling Content by Defining Trusted Locations .................... 39
- Understanding the New Ribbon Feature ........................................ 41
  - Home Tab ............................................................................... 42
  - Create Tab ............................................................................ 42
  - External Data Tab ................................................................ 43
  - Database Tools Tab ................................................................. 44
- Understanding the New Navigation Pane ........................................ 45
  - Exploring Navigation Pane Object Views ................................. 48
  - Working with Custom Categories and Groups ...................... 53
  - Sorting and Selecting Views in the Navigation Pane ............... 76
  - Manually Sorting Objects in the Navigation Pane .................. 77
  - Searching for Database Objects ............................................ 78
- Using the Single-Document vs. Multiple-Document Interface ........ 83
- Modifying Global Settings via the Access Options Dialog Box .... 87

## Chapter 3: Microsoft Office Access 2007 Overview
- The Architecture of Access ............................................................. 99
- Exploring a Desktop Database—Housing Reservations ............... 102
  - Tables .................................................................................... 105
  - Queries ................................................................................. 110
  - Forms ..................................................................................... 114
  - Reports .................................................................................. 120
  - Macros ................................................................................... 128
  - Modules ............................................................................... 130
- Exploring a Project File—Conrad Systems Contacts ............... 132
  - Tables .................................................................................... 133
  - Views, Functions, and Stored Procedures .............................. 135
- The Many Faces of Access .............................................................. 137

## Part 2: Building an Access 2007 Desktop Application

## Chapter 4: Creating Your Database and Tables
- Creating a New Database ............................................................. 141
  - Using a Database Template to Create a Database .................. 142
  - Creating a New Empty Database ............................................ 147
- Creating Your First Simple Table by Entering Data .................. 149
- Creating a Table Using a Table Template ................................. 151
## Chapter 5: Modifying Your Table Design

- **Before You Get Started** .................................................. 204
  - Making a Backup Copy .................................................. 205
  - Checking Object Dependencies .................................. 207
- **Deleting Tables** ............................................................. 209
- **Renaming Tables** ........................................................... 211
- **Changing Field Names** .................................................. 212
- **Moving Fields** ............................................................... 217
- **Inserting Fields** ............................................................ 220
- **Copying Fields** ............................................................. 222
- **Deleting Fields** ............................................................. 225
- **Changing Data Attributes** ............................................. 225
  - Changing Data Types .................................................. 226
  - Changing Data Lengths ................................................. 230
  - Dealing with Conversion Errors ................................... 231
  - Changing Other Field Properties ................................ 232
- **Reversing Changes** ....................................................... 234
- **Using the Table Analyzer Wizard** .................................. 234
- **Taking a Look at Lookup Properties** ................................ 240
- **Working with Multi-Value Lookup Fields** ....................... 245
- **Changing the Primary Key** ............................................ 248
- **Compacting Your Database** .......................................... 250
Chapter 6:  Importing and Linking Data ............................................. 253
  A Word About Open Database Connectivity (ODBC) .......................... 253
  Creating a Data Source to Link to an ODBC Database .......................... 255
  Importing vs. Linking Database Files .................................................. 259
  Importing Data and Databases .............................................................. 260
    Importing dBASE Files ........................................................................ 260
    Importing Paradox Files ....................................................................... 265
    Importing SQL Tables ......................................................................... 266
    Importing Access Objects ..................................................................... 271
  Importing Spreadsheet Data ................................................................. 273
    Preparing a Spreadsheet ..................................................................... 274
    Importing a Spreadsheet ..................................................................... 275
    Fixing Errors ...................................................................................... 280
  Importing Text Files .............................................................................. 282
    Preparing a Text File .......................................................................... 282
    Importing a Text File .......................................................................... 285
    Fixing Errors ...................................................................................... 290
  Modifying Imported Tables ..................................................................... 292
  Linking Files .......................................................................................... 292
    Security Considerations ...................................................................... 293
    Performance Considerations ................................................................. 293
    Linking Access Tables ........................................................................ 295
    Linking dBASE and Paradox Files ......................................................... 298
    Linking Text and Spreadsheet Files ..................................................... 300
    Linking SQL Tables ............................................................................. 301
    Modifying Linked Tables ..................................................................... 302
    Unlinking Linked Tables ..................................................................... 303
    Using the Linked Table Manager .......................................................... 303
  Collecting Data via E-Mail ..................................................................... 304
    Collecting Data via HTML Forms .......................................................... 305
    Collecting Data Using InfoPath Forms .................................................. 327

Chapter 7:  Creating and Working with Simple Queries ......................... 347
  Selecting Data from a Single Table ....................................................... 349
    Specifying Fields .................................................................................. 351
    Setting Field Properties ...................................................................... 353
    Entering Selection Criteria ................................................................... 355
    Using Expressions ............................................................................... 362
    Using the Expression Builder ................................................................. 371
    Specifying Field Names ...................................................................... 377
    Sorting Data ......................................................................................... 378
  Testing Validation Rule Changes ............................................................ 381
    Checking a New Field Validation Rule .................................................. 381
    Checking a New Table Validation Rule ............................................... 382
  Working in Query Datasheet View ......................................................... 384
    Moving Around and Using Keyboard Shortcuts ..................................... 384
    Working with Subdatasheets ................................................................. 387
Chapter 8: **Building Complex Queries** ........................................... 413
- Selecting Data from Multiple Tables ........................................ 414
- Creating Inner Joins ................................................................. 414
- Building a Query on a Query ...................................................... 421
- Using Outer Joins ................................................................. 425
- Using a Query Wizard ............................................................ 431
- Summarizing Information with Totals Queries .......................... 435
  - Totals Within Groups .............................................................. 435
  - Selecting Records to Form Groups ........................................... 440
  - Selecting Specific Groups ....................................................... 441
  - Building Crosstab Queries .................................................... 442
- Using Query Parameters .......................................................... 449
- Customizing Query Properties .................................................. 452
  - Controlling Query Output ........................................................ 452
  - Working with Unique Records and Values ............................... 454
  - Defining a Subdatasheet .......................................................... 458
  - Other Query Properties .......................................................... 462
- Editing and Creating Queries in SQL View ................................... 463
- Limitations on Using Select Queries to Update Data .................... 468
- Creating PivotTables and PivotCharts from Queries .................... 469
  - Building a Query for a PivotTable ........................................... 470
  - Designing a PivotTable ............................................................ 473
  - Designing a PivotChart ............................................................ 478

Chapter 9: **Modifying Data with Action Queries** ......................... 485
- Updating Groups of Rows .......................................................... 486
  - Testing with a Select Query ..................................................... 486
  - Converting a Select Query to an Update Query ........................ 488
  - Running an Update Query ....................................................... 489
  - Updating Multiple Fields ........................................................ 491
  - Creating an Update Query Using Multiple Tables or Queries .... 493
- Creating a New Table with a Make-Table Query ......................... 495
  - Creating a Make-Table Query ................................................ 496
  - Running a Make-Table Query .................................................. 500
- Inserting Data from Another Table .......................................... 502
  - Creating an Append Query ..................................................... 503
  - Running an Append Query ..................................................... 506
- Deleting Groups of Rows .......................................................... 507
  - Testing with a Select Query ..................................................... 507
  - Using a Delete Query ............................................................. 510
  - Deleting Inactive Data ............................................................ 510
- Troubleshooting Action Queries ................................................ 512
  - Solving Common Action Query Errors and Problems .................. 512
  - Looking at an Error Example ................................................... 513

Changing Data ................................................................. 390
Working with Hyperlinks .......................................................... 397
Sorting and Searching for Data .................................................. 401
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter 13: Advanced Form Design</th>
<th>685</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Creating and Embedding Subforms</td>
<td>692</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Basing a Form on a Multiple-Table Query</td>
<td>686</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Creating a Many-to-One Form</td>
<td>686</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting Control Properties</td>
<td>651</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Formatting Properties</td>
<td>651</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adding a Scroll Bar</td>
<td>661</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enabling and Locking Controls</td>
<td>662</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting the Tab Order</td>
<td>662</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adding a Smart Tag</td>
<td>663</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Understanding Other Control Properties</td>
<td>666</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting Form Properties</td>
<td>670</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allowing Different Views</td>
<td>670</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting Navigation Options</td>
<td>671</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Defining a Pop-Up and/or Modal Form</td>
<td>672</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Controlling Edits, Deletions, Additions, and Filtering</td>
<td>673</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Defining Window Controls</td>
<td>675</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting the Border Style</td>
<td>675</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Understanding Other Form Properties</td>
<td>676</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting Form and Control Defaults</td>
<td>680</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Changing Control Defaults</td>
<td>680</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Working with AutoFormat</td>
<td>681</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Defining a Template Form</td>
<td>682</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Expanding the Look of a Form</td>
<td>642</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lines and Rectangles</td>
<td>642</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colors and Special Effects</td>
<td>645</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fonts</td>
<td>648</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting Control Properties</td>
<td>651</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Formatting Properties</td>
<td>651</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adding a Scroll Bar</td>
<td>661</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enabling and Locking Controls</td>
<td>662</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting the Tab Order</td>
<td>662</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adding a Smart Tag</td>
<td>663</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Understanding Other Control Properties</td>
<td>666</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting Form Properties</td>
<td>670</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allowing Different Views</td>
<td>670</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting Navigation Options</td>
<td>671</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Defining a Pop-Up and/or Modal Form</td>
<td>672</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Controlling Edits, Deletions, Additions, and Filtering</td>
<td>673</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Defining Window Controls</td>
<td>675</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting the Border Style</td>
<td>675</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Understanding Other Form Properties</td>
<td>676</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting Form and Control Defaults</td>
<td>680</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Changing Control Defaults</td>
<td>680</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Working with AutoFormat</td>
<td>681</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Defining a Template Form</td>
<td>682</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Working in Layout View</td>
<td>623</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Understanding Control Layouts and Control Anchoring</td>
<td>623</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lining Up Controls</td>
<td>625</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moving Controls Within a Control Layout</td>
<td>626</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Formatting a Column of Controls</td>
<td>630</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resizing Controls</td>
<td>631</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Removing a Control Layout</td>
<td>632</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Placing Controls into a Control Layout</td>
<td>635</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adding Some Space with Control Padding</td>
<td>638</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Completing the Form</td>
<td>640</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adding Some Space with Control Padding</td>
<td>638</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Understanding Other Form Properties</td>
<td>676</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting Control Properties</td>
<td>651</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Formatting Properties</td>
<td>651</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adding a Scroll Bar</td>
<td>661</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enabling and Locking Controls</td>
<td>662</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting the Tab Order</td>
<td>662</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adding a Smart Tag</td>
<td>663</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Understanding Other Control Properties</td>
<td>666</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting Form Properties</td>
<td>670</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allowing Different Views</td>
<td>670</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting Navigation Options</td>
<td>671</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Defining a Pop-Up and/or Modal Form</td>
<td>672</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Controlling Edits, Deletions, Additions, and Filtering</td>
<td>673</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Defining Window Controls</td>
<td>675</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting the Border Style</td>
<td>675</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Understanding Other Form Properties</td>
<td>676</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting Form and Control Defaults</td>
<td>680</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Changing Control Defaults</td>
<td>680</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Working with AutoFormat</td>
<td>681</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Defining a Template Form</td>
<td>682</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# Table of Contents

## Chapter 14: **Using Reports**
- Uses of Reports .................................................. 735
- A Tour of Reports .................................................. 736
  - Print Preview—A First Look ................................. 737
  - Headers, Detail Sections, Footers, and Groups .............. 739
  - Subreports .................................................. 741
  - Objects in Reports ........................................... 744
  - Report View—A First Look .................................. 745
- Printing Reports ................................................ 750
  - Print Setup ................................................ 750

## Chapter 15: **Constructing a Report**
- Starting from Scratch—A Simple Report ...................... 757
  - Building the Report Query ................................... 758
  - Designing the Report ........................................ 759
  - Grouping, Sorting, and Totaling Information ............... 761
  - Completing the Report ...................................... 769
- Using the Report Command ..................................... 775
- Using the Report Wizard ...................................... 777
  - Specifying Report Wizard Options ............................ 778
  - Viewing the Result ........................................... 783
  - Modifying a Wizard-Created Report in Layout View ....... 784
- Building a Report in Layout View ............................ 790
  - Starting with a Blank Report ................................ 790
  - Adding Grouping and Sorting ................................ 792
  - Working with Control Layouts ............................... 797
  - Adding Totals to Records .................................... 804
  - Applying an AutoFormat ..................................... 807

## Chapter 16: **Advanced Report Design**
- Building a Query for a Complex Report ...................... 812
- Creating the Basic Facility Occupancy By Date Report .... 813
- Defining the Grouping and Sorting Criteria .................. 816
- Setting Section and Report Properties ....................... 819
  - Section Properties ......................................... 819
  - Report Properties .......................................... 822
- Using Calculated Values ...................................... 830
  - Adding the Print Date and Page Numbers .................... 830
  - Performing Calculations .................................... 833
  - Hiding Redundant Values and Concatenating Text Strings .. 840
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter 17: Understanding Event Processing</th>
<th>867</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Access as a Windows Event-Driven Application</td>
<td>867</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Understanding Events in Windows</td>
<td>867</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leveraging Access Events to Build an Application</td>
<td>868</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Summary of Form and Report Events</td>
<td>869</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Understanding Event Sequence and Form Editing</td>
<td>882</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter 18: Automating Your Application with Macros</th>
<th>887</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Uses of Macros</td>
<td>888</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Macro Design Facility—An Overview</td>
<td>890</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Working with the Macro Design Window</td>
<td>890</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saving Your Macro</td>
<td>893</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Testing Your Macro</td>
<td>894</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Defining Multiple Actions</td>
<td>895</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grouping Macros</td>
<td>897</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Understanding Conditional Expressions</td>
<td>900</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Using Embedded Macros</td>
<td>901</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Editing an Embedded Macro</td>
<td>902</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Creating an Embedded Macro</td>
<td>904</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deleting an Embedded Macro</td>
<td>906</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Using Temporary Variables</td>
<td>907</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trapping Errors in Macros</td>
<td>910</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Understanding Macro Actions That Are Not Trusted</td>
<td>916</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Making Your Application Come Alive with Macros</td>
<td>918</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Referencing Form and Report Objects</td>
<td>919</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Opening a Secondary Form</td>
<td>921</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Synchronizing Two Related Forms</td>
<td>924</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Validating Data and Presetting Values</td>
<td>928</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Converting Your Macros to Visual Basic</td>
<td>938</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter 19: Understanding Visual Basic Fundamentals</th>
<th>941</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The Visual Basic Development Environment</td>
<td>942</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Modules</td>
<td>942</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Visual Basic Editor Window</td>
<td>945</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Working with Visual Basic Debugging Tools</td>
<td>951</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table of Contents

Variables and Constants .................................................. 961
Data Types ................................................................. 961
Variable and Constant Scope ........................................... 963
Declaring Constants and Variables ...................................... 965
  Const Statement ....................................................... 965
  Dim Statement ........................................................ 966
  Enum Statement ....................................................... 969
  Event Statement ...................................................... 971
  Private Statement .................................................... 972
  Public Statement ..................................................... 973
  ReDim Statement ..................................................... 974
  Static Statement ..................................................... 975
  Type Statement ........................................................ 977
Collections, Objects, Properties, and Methods ......................... 978
  The Access Application Architecture ............................... 978
  The Data Access Objects (DAO) Architecture ...................... 981
  The ActiveX Data Objects (ADO) Architecture .................... 985
  Referencing Collections, Objects, and Properties ................ 987
  Assigning an Object Variable—Set Statement ..................... 991
  Object Methods ...................................................... 993
Functions and Subroutines ................................................ 1005
  Function Statement .................................................. 1006
  Sub Statement ........................................................ 1007
Understanding Class Modules ............................................. 1009
  Property Get .......................................................... 1010
  Property Let .......................................................... 1012
  Property Set .......................................................... 1014
Controlling the Flow of Statements ..................................... 1016
  Call Statement ....................................................... 1017
  Do...Loop Statement .................................................. 1017
  For...Next Statement .................................................. 1018
  For Each...Next Statement ............................................ 1019
  GoTo Statement ....................................................... 1020
  If...Then...Else Statement .......................................... 1021
  RaiseEvent Statement ................................................ 1022
  Select Case Statement ............................................... 1023
  Stop Statement ........................................................ 1024
  While...Wend Statement .............................................. 1025
  With...End Statement ................................................. 1025
Running Macro Actions and Menu Commands .............................. 1026
  DoCmd Object .......................................................... 1026
  Executing an Access Command ...................................... 1027
  Actions with Visual Basic Equivalents .............................. 1028
Trapping Errors ................................................................ 1028
  On Error Statement .................................................... 1029
Some Complex Visual Basic Examples .................................... 1030
  A Procedure to Randomly Load Data ................................ 1030
  A Procedure to Examine All Error Codes ......................... 1044
### Table of Contents

**Chapter 20: Automating Your Application with Visual Basic**

- Why Aren't We Using Macros? ................................................. 1051
- When to Use Macros .......................................................... 1052
- When to Use Visual Basic .................................................... 1052

*Assisting Data Entry* .............................................................. 1053
- Filling In Related Data ....................................................... 1053
- Handling the NotInList Event ............................................. 1058
- Fixing an E-Mail Hyperlink ................................................ 1061
- Providing a Graphical Calendar ......................................... 1063
- Working with Linked Photos .............................................. 1069

*Validating Complex Data* ..................................................... 1071
- Checking for Possible Duplicate Names ............................. 1071
- Testing for Related Records When Deleting a Record ........... 1074
- Verifying a Prerequisite .................................................... 1075
- Maintaining a Special Unique Value ................................. 1077
- Checking for Overlapping Data ......................................... 1078

*Controlling Tabbing on a Multiple-Page Form* ....................... 1080

*Automating Data Selection* .................................................. 1082
- Working with a Multiple-Selection List Box ....................... 1082
- Providing a Custom Query By Form .................................. 1086
- Selecting from a Summary List ........................................ 1094
- Filtering One List with Another ...................................... 1095

*Linking to Related Data in Another Form or Report* .............. 1098
- Linking Forms Using a Filter ........................................... 1098
- Linking to a Report Using a Filter .................................. 1099
- Synchronizing Two Forms Using a Class Event .................... 1101

*Automating Complex Tasks* ................................................ 1105
- Triggering a Data Task from a Related Form ...................... 1105
- Linking to a Related Task ............................................... 1109
- Calculating a Stored Value ............................................. 1114

*Automating Reports* .......................................................... 1114
- Allowing for Used Mailing Labels ................................. 1115
- Drawing on a Report ...................................................... 1118
- Dynamically Filtering a Report When It Opens ................. 1121

**Part 5: Linking Access and the Web** .................................. 1125

**Chapter 21: Publishing Data on the Web** ................................ 1127

*Working with the Web* .......................................................... 1127
- Understanding HTML ....................................................... 1128
- Introducing XML ............................................................. 1135

*Understanding Static Web Pages* ....................................... 1137
*Viewing Static HTML Pages* ............................................. 1139
*Creating a Static HTML Document* .................................... 1140
*Improving the Look of Exported Data in HTML* .................. 1143
*Generating an HTML Page from an Access Report* ............... 1151
*Writing HTML from Visual Basic* ...................................... 1154
Creating Dynamic Web Pages ................................................................. 1158
Delivering Dynamic Query Results ....................................................... 1158
Processing Live Data with HTML Forms ................................................. 1160
Using Visual Studio .NET and ASP.NET ..................................................... 1160
Sharing Your Data with SharePoint ......................................................... 1161
Introducing Windows SharePoint Services .............................................. 1161
Office and Windows SharePoint Services ............................................... 1162

Chapter 22: Working with Windows SharePoint Services ...................... 1165
Working Within the Windows SharePoint Services User Interface .......... 1167
Editing Data in Lists ................................................................. 1168
Creating New Views ................................................................. 1172
Adding Columns to Lists ................................................................. 1175
Recycle Bin ................................................................. 1179
Using Windows SharePoint Services from Access .......................... 1182
Exporting Data to Windows SharePoint Services ......................... 1182
Importing a List from Windows SharePoint Services ...................... 1186
Linking a Windows SharePoint Services List into Access ................. 1191
Using SharePoint List Options with Linked Lists ......................... 1196
Creating a New Windows SharePoint Services List from Within Access .... 1198
Migrating an Access Database to a Windows SharePoint Services Site .... 1207
Publishing Your Database to a Windows SharePoint Services Site ....... 1208
Moving Your Database to a Windows SharePoint Services Site ............ 1212
Republish a Database to a Windows SharePoint Services Site ............. 1219
Opening the Database from Windows SharePoint Services ............... 1223
Working Offline ................................................................. 1226
Synchronizing Changes After Working Offline ........................................ 1230

Chapter 23: Using XML ................................................................. 1235
Exploring XML ................................................................. 1236
Well-Formed XML ................................................................. 1236
Understanding XML File Types ............................................................ 1237
Using XML in Microsoft Access ......................................................... 1245
Exporting and Importing XML from the User Interface .......... 1245
Importing and Exporting XML in Visual Basic ....................... 1256
Modifying Table Templates ............................................................... 1260
Adding a New Field to a Table Template .............................................. 1261
Modifying a Field in a Table Template ................................................. 1264
Customizing the Ribbon with XML ....................................................... 1266
Creating a USysRibbons Table .............................................................. 1266
Creating a Test Form ................................................................. 1270
Building the Ribbon XML ................................................................. 1270
Part 6: After Completing Your Application .......................... 1281

Chapter 24:  The Finishing Touches ........................................ 1283
  Creating Custom Ribbons .................................................. 1283
  Loading Ribbon XML ...................................................... 1284
  Using Ribbon Attributes .................................................. 1287
  Creating VBA Callbacks .................................................... 1296
  Dynamically Updating Ribbon Elements .............................. 1297
  Loading Images into Custom Controls ................................. 1299
  Hiding Options on the Microsoft Office Button .................... 1300
  Setting Focus to a Tab .................................................... 1301
  Fine-Tuning with Performance Analyzer .............................. 1302
  Disabling Layout View .................................................... 1304
  Defining Switchboard Forms .............................................. 1305
    Designing a Switchboard Form from Scratch ....................... 1305
    Using the Switchboard Manager to Design Switchboard Forms ... 1306
  Controlling How Your Application Starts and Runs ................ 1310
    Setting Startup Properties for Your Database ................... 1310
    Starting and Stopping Your Application ............................ 1312
    Creating an AutoKeys Macro .......................................... 1315
    Performing a Final Visual Basic Compile ........................... 1316

Chapter 25:  Distributing Your Application .............................. 1319
  Using Linked Tables in a Desktop Database .......................... 1320
    Taking Advantage of the Database Splitter Wizard ............... 1320
    Creating Startup Code to Verify and Correct Linked Table Connections 1323
  Understanding Runtime Mode .......................................... 1328
  Creating an Execute-Only Database .................................... 1329
  Creating an Application Shortcut ..................................... 1331
  Encrypting Your Database .............................................. 1334
  Packaging and Signing Your Database .................................. 1336
  Understanding the Access 2007 Developer Extensions and Runtime 1340

See the companion CD for bonus content Parts 7 and 8

Appendix:  Installing Your Software ......................................... 1341
  Installing the Microsoft Office System ............................... 1342
    Choosing Options When You Have No Previous Version of Microsoft Office 1342
    Choosing Options to Upgrade a Previous Version of Microsoft Office 1347
  Installing SQL Server 2005 Express Edition ......................... 1349
  Converting from a Previous Release of Access ...................... 1358
    Conversion Issues ...................................................... 1359
Index to Troubleshooting Topics ........................................... 1361
Index .................................................................................. 1363

Bonus Content on the Companion CD

Part 7: Designing an Access Project ................................. 1445

Chapter 26: Building Tables in an Access Project .......... 1447
Creating a New Project File .............................................. 1448
  Building a New SQL Server Database ......................... 1448
  Connecting to an Existing SQL Server Database .......... 1452
Creating a Table in Design View ................................... 1457
Defining Columns .............................................................. 1459
  Column Data Types ......................................................... 1461
  Completing the Columns in the Companies Table ......... 1465
  Understanding Column Properties ................................ 1467
Defining a Primary Key ..................................................... 1470
Adding Indexes ................................................................. 1471
Creating Additional Tables in Contact Tracking .......... 1475
Defining Check Constraints ............................................. 1477
  Creating Additional Constraint Expressions ................. 1481
Defining Relationships ..................................................... 1482
  Defining Relationships in Table Design View .......... 1482
  Defining Relationships Using Database Diagrams ....... 1485
Setting Table Design Options .......................................... 1488

Chapter 27: Building Queries in an Access Project .......... 1491
Viewing Queries in an Access Project .............................. 1492
Building Queries Using the Query Designer ................... 1495
  Understanding the Query Designer ............................... 1495
  Working with Views ....................................................... 1507
  Working with In-Line Functions .................................... 1513
  Working with Stored Procedures ................................. 1519
Building Queries Using a Text Editor .............................. 1524
  Building a Text Stored Procedure ................................. 1526
  Building a Text Scalar Function .................................... 1541
  Building a Text Table-Valued Function ....................... 1543
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter 28: Designing Forms in an Access Project</th>
<th>1547</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Understanding Form Differences in an Access Project</td>
<td>1547</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Choosing Option Settings</td>
<td>1549</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting Project Form Properties</td>
<td>1552</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting Recordset Type</td>
<td>1554</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Understanding Max Records</td>
<td>1555</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Working with Server Filters</td>
<td>1558</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting Input Parameters</td>
<td>1561</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter 29: Building Reports in an Access Project</td>
<td>1567</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Understanding Report Differences in an Access Project</td>
<td>1567</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting Project Report Properties</td>
<td>1569</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Working with Server Filters</td>
<td>1570</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Working with Input Parameters</td>
<td>1572</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Part 8: Articles**.............................................................................. A1

**Article 1: Designing Your Database Application**.......................... A3

Application Design Fundamentals. ................................................. A3

  Step 1: Identifying Tasks. ..................................................... A4
  Step 2: Charting Task Flow. .................................................. A4
  Step 3: Identifying Data Elements ...................................... A5
  Step 4: Organizing the Data................................................ A5
  Step 5: Designing a Prototype and a User Interface .............. A5
  Step 6: Constructing the Application ................................ A5
  Step 7: Testing, Reviewing, and Refining ......................... A6

An Application Design Strategy ................................................ A7

  Analyzing the Tasks ............................................................. A7
  Selecting the Data ............................................................. A11
  Organizing Tasks ............................................................... A11

Data Analysis. ................................................................................. A13

  Choosing the Database Subjects ........................................ A13
  Mapping Subjects to Your Database ................................... A16

Database Design Concepts. ....................................................... A16

  Waste Is the Problem .......................................................... A17
  Normalization Is the Solution ............................................ A19
  Efficient Relationships Are the Result .............................. A27

When to Break the Rules .......................................................... A28

  Improving Performance of Critical Tasks ............................ A29
  Capturing Point-in-Time Data .............................................. A29
  Creating Report Snapshot Data ......................................... A31
Article 6: **Macro Actions.** A101

- Opening and Closing Access Objects A102
- Printing Data A105
- Executing a Query A106
- Testing Conditions and Controlling Action Flow A107
- Setting Values A109
- Searching for Data A111
- Building a Custom Menu and Executing Menu Commands A112
- Controlling Display and Focus A113
- Informing the User of Actions A115
- Renaming, Copying, Deleting, Saving, Importing, and Exporting Objects A115
- Using Temporary Variables A117
- Handling Errors A118
- Running Another Application A118

What do you think of this book? We want to hear from you!

Microsoft is interested in hearing your feedback so we can continually improve our books and learning resources for you. To participate in a brief online survey, please visit: www.microsoft.com/learning/booksurvey/
Acknowledgments

The folks on the Microsoft Office Access development team provided invaluable technical support as we worked with the beta software and tried to figure out some of the challenging technical details in Microsoft Office Access 2007. Special thanks to Clint Covington, Tim Getsch, Zac Woodall, Suraj Poozhiyil, Neil Black, Viki Selca, and Rob Cooper. You folks make an author’s job so much easier. But any errors or omissions in this book are ultimately ours.

A book this large and complex requires a top-notch team to get what we put into Microsoft Office Word documents onto the printed pages you are now holding. We had some of the best in the business at both Microsoft Press and Publishing.com to get the job done. Many thanks to Sandra Haynes and Melissa von Tschudi-Sutton at Microsoft Press. Special thanks to Curt Philips, Rozanne Murphy Whalen, Andrea Fox, Kim Wimpsett, and Publishing.com. We couldn’t have done it without you!

And last, but certainly not least, we thank our wives and soul mates. They not only patiently stood by us as we cranked through nearly 3,000 pages of manuscript but also helped behind the scenes reviewing and editing what we did.

John Viescas   Jeff Conrad
Paris, France   Bend, Oregon

February 2007
About the CD

The companion CD that ships with this book contains many tools and resources to help you get the most out of your Inside Out book.

**CAUTION**

If you install the sample files on a Microsoft Windows Vista system, a Windows XP system, or a Windows Server 2003 or later system, you must run the installation program as an Administrator to install the files in the default location. If you do not do that, Microsoft Office Access 2007 opens all the database files as read-only. If you are unable to run the installation program as an Administrator, change the default installation location to a subfolder in My Documents.

**Note**

If for any reason you are unable to access the files from the CD, the files can also be downloaded from the Web at [http://www.microsoftpressstore.com/9780735623255](http://www.microsoftpressstore.com/9780735623255)

What’s on the CD

Your Inside Out CD includes the following:

- **Sample files**  Click the Install Sample Files button on the Welcome tab to install the sample files and resources referenced in the book.

- **Additional eBooks**  In this section you’ll find the following resources:
  
  
  - *First Look 2007 Microsoft Office System* (Katherine Murray, 2006)
  
  - Sample chapter and poster from *Look Both Ways: Help Protect Your Family on the Internet* (Linda Criddle, 2007)
  
  - Windows Vista Product Guide

- **Extending Office**  Here you’ll find links to Microsoft and other third-party tools that will help you get the most out of your software experience.

- **Resources**  In this section, you’ll find links to white papers, users assistance articles, product support information, insider blogs, tools, and much more.

- **Bonus content**  In the Bonus Content section, you’ll find four chapters that will teach you additional skills for creating client/server applications in an Access project. You’ll also find six articles that contain important reference materials.
Sample Applications

Throughout this book, you’ll see examples from three sample Office Access 2007 applications included on the companion CD:

- **Wedding List (WeddingMC.accdb and WeddingList.accdb)**. This application is an example of a simple database that you might build for your personal use. It has a single main table where you can track the names and addresses of invitees, whether they’ve said that they will attend, the description of any gift they sent, and whether a thank you note has been sent. Although you might be tempted to store such a simple list in a Microsoft Excel spreadsheet or a Microsoft Word document, this application demonstrates how storing the information in Access makes it easy to search and sort the data and produce reports. The WeddingMC database is automated entirely using macros, and the WeddingList database is the same application automated with Microsoft Visual Basic.

- **Housing Reservations (Housing.accdb)**. This application demonstrates how a company housing department might track and manage reservations in company-owned housing facilities for out-of-town employees and guests. This application includes data access pages that could be published on a company intranet for use by employees logging in from remote locations. You’ll also find HousingDataCopy.accdb and HousingDataCopy2.accdb files that contain many of the query, form, and report examples.

- **Conrad Systems Contacts (Contacts.accdb, ContactsData.accdb, Contacts.adp, and ContactsSQL.mdf)**. This application is both a contacts management and order entry database—two samples for the price of one! This sample database demonstrates how to build a client/server application using only desktop tools as well as how to “upsize” an application to create an Office Access 2007 project and related Microsoft SQL Server tables, views, stored procedures, and functions. You will need to install Microsoft SQL Server 2005 Express Edition to be able to fully use the project version of this database. You’ll also find a ContactsDataCopy.accdb file that contains additional query, form, and report examples.

Please note that the person names, company names, e-mail addresses, and Web site addresses in these databases are fictitious. Although we preloaded both databases with sample data, the Housing Reservations and Conrad Systems Contacts databases also include a special form (zfrmLoadData) that has code to load random data into the sample tables based on parameters that you supply.

The examples in this book assume you have installed the 2007 Microsoft Office system, not just Access 2007. Several examples also assume that you have installed all optional features of Access through the 2007 Office release setup program. If you have not installed these additional features, your screen might not match the illustrations in this book or you might not be able to run the samples from the companion CD.
System Requirements

The following are the minimum system requirements necessary to run the CD:

- Microsoft Windows Vista, Windows XP with Service Pack (SP) 2, Windows Server 2003 with SP1, or newer operating system
- 500 megahertz (MHz) processor or higher
- 2 gigabytes (GB) storage space (a portion of this disk space will be freed after installation if the original download package is removed from the hard drive)
- 256 megabytes (MB) RAM
- CD-ROM or DVD-ROM drive
- 1024×768 or higher resolution monitor
- Microsoft Windows or Windows Vista–compatible sound card and speakers
- Microsoft Internet Explorer 6 or newer
- Microsoft Mouse or compatible pointing device

Note
An Internet connection is necessary to access the hyperlinks on the companion CD. Connect time charges may apply.

Errata & Book Support

If you find an error, please report it on our Microsoft Press site:

2. In the Search box, enter the book’s ISBN or title.
3. Select your book from the search results.
4. On your book’s catalog page, find the Errata & Updates tab.
5. Click View/Submit Errata.

You’ll find additional information and services for your book on its catalog page. If you need additional support, please e-mail Microsoft Press Book Support at mspinput@microsoft.com.
If for any reason you are unable to install the practice files from the CD, the files can also be downloaded from the Web here:


Please note that product support for Microsoft software is not offered through the addresses above. For software assistance, visit support.microsoft.com.

Note
This companion CD relies on scripting for some interface enhancements. If scripting is disabled or unavailable in your browser, follow these steps to run the CD:

1. From My Computer, double-click the drive that contains this companion CD.
2. Open the Webfiles folder.
3. Double-click Welcome.htm to open the CD in your default browser.

We Want to Hear from You

At Microsoft Press, your satisfaction is our top priority, and your feedback our most valuable asset. Please tell us what you think of this book at:

http://www.microsoft.com/learning/booksurvey

The survey is short, and we read every one of your comments and ideas. Thanks in advance for your input!

Stay in Touch

Let’s keep the conversation going! We’re on Twitter: http://twitter.com/MicrosoftPress.
Conventions and Features Used in This Book

This book uses special text and design conventions to make it easier for you to find the information you need.

Text Conventions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Convention</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Abbreviated commands for</td>
<td>Abbreviated commands for navigating the Ribbon. For your convenience, this book uses abbreviated commands. For example, “Click Home, Insert, Insert Cells” means that you should click the Home tab on the Ribbon, then click the Insert button, and finally click the Insert Cells command.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Boldface type</td>
<td><strong>Boldface</strong> type is used to indicate text that you type.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Initial Capital Letters</td>
<td>The first letters of the names of tabs, dialog boxes, dialog box elements, and commands are capitalized. Example: the Save As dialog box.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Italicized type</td>
<td><strong>Italicized</strong> type is used to indicate new terms.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plus sign (+) in text</td>
<td>Keyboard shortcuts are indicated by a plus sign (+) separating two key names. For example, Alt+Shift+Tab means that you press the Alt, Shift, and Tab keys at the same time.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Design Conventions

**INSIDE OUT**

This Statement Illustrates an Example of an “Inside Out” Heading

These are the book’s signature tips. In these tips, you’ll get the straight scoop on what’s going on with the software—inside information about why a feature works the way it does. You’ll also find handy workarounds to deal with software problems.

Sidebars

Sidebars provide helpful hints, timesaving tricks, or alternative procedures related to the task being discussed.
TROUBLESHOOTING

This statement illustrates an example of a “Troubleshooting” problem statement.

Look for these sidebars to find solutions to common problems you might encounter. Troubleshooting sidebars appear next to related information in the chapters. You can also use “Index to Troubleshooting Topics” at the back of the book to look up problems by topic.

Cross-references point you to other locations in the book that offer additional information about the topic being discussed.

CAUTION!

Cautions identify potential problems that you should look out for when you’re completing a task or problems that you must address before you can complete a task.

Note

Notes offer additional information related to the task being discussed.

When an example has a related file that is included on the companion CD, this icon appears in the margin. You can use these files to follow along with the book’s examples.
Syntax Conventions

The following conventions are used in the syntax descriptions for Visual Basic statements in Chapter 19, “Understanding Visual Basic Fundamentals,” Chapter 20, “Automating Your Application with Visual Basic,” SQL statements in Article 2, “Understanding SQL,” and any other chapter where you find syntax defined. These conventions do not apply to code examples listed within the text; all code examples appear exactly as you’ll find them in the sample databases.

You must enter all other symbols, such as parentheses and colons, exactly as they appear in the syntax line. Much of the syntax shown in the Visual Basic chapter has been broken into multiple lines. You can format your code all on one line, or you can write a single line of code on multiple lines using the Visual Basic line continuation character (_).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Convention</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Bold</strong></td>
<td>Bold type indicates keywords and reserved words that you must enter exactly as shown. Visual Basic understands keywords entered in uppercase, lowercase, and mixed case type. Access stores SQL keywords in queries in all uppercase, but you can enter the keywords in any case.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Italic</strong></td>
<td>Italicized words represent variables that you supply.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Angle brackets &lt; &gt;</strong></td>
<td>Angle brackets enclose syntactic elements that you must supply. The words inside the angle brackets describe the element but do not show the actual syntax of the element. Do not enter the angle brackets.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Brackets [ ]</strong></td>
<td>Brackets enclose optional items. If more than one item is listed, the items are separated by a pipe character (</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Braces { }</strong></td>
<td>Braces enclose one or more options. If more than one option is listed, the items are separated by a pipe character (</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Ellipsis ...</strong></td>
<td>Ellipses indicate that you can repeat an item one or more times. When a comma is shown with an ellipsis (,...), enter a comma between items.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Underscore _</strong></td>
<td>You can use a blank space followed by an underscore to continue a line of Visual Basic code to the next line for readability. You cannot place an underscore in the middle of a string literal. You do not need an underscore for continued lines in SQL, but you cannot break a literal across lines.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Introduction

Microsoft Office Access 2007 is just one part of Microsoft’s overall data management product strategy. Like all good relational databases, it allows you to link related information easily—for example, customer and order data that you enter. But Office Access 2007 also complements other database products because it has several powerful connectivity features. As its name implies, Access 2007 can work directly with data from other sources, including many popular personal computer database programs (such as dBASE and Paradox), with many SQL (Structured Query Language) databases on the desktop, on servers, on minicomputers, or on mainframes, and with data stored on Internet or intranet Web servers. Access 2007 also fully supports Microsoft’s ActiveX technology, so an Access application can be either a client or a server for all the other 2007 Microsoft Office system applications, including Word, Excel, PowerPoint, Outlook, FrontPage, Publisher, and OneNote.

Access provides a very sophisticated application development system for the Microsoft Windows operating system. This helps you build applications quickly, whatever the data source. In fact, you can build simple applications by defining forms and reports based on your data and linking them with a few macros or Microsoft Visual Basic statements; there’s no need to write complex code in the classic programming sense. Because Access uses Visual Basic, you can use the same set of skills with other applications in the Microsoft Office system or with Visual Basic.

For small businesses (and for consultants creating applications for small businesses), the Access desktop development features are all that’s required to store and manage the data used to run the business. Access coupled with Microsoft SQL Server—on the desktop or on a server—is an ideal way for many medium-size companies to build new applications for Windows quickly and inexpensively. To enhance workgroup productivity, you can use Access to create an application linked to data on a Microsoft Windows SharePoint Services server. For large corporations with a big investment in mainframe relational database applications as well as a proliferation of desktop applications that rely on personal computer databases, Access provides the tools to easily link mainframe and personal computer data in a single Windows-based application. Access 2007 includes features to allow you to export or import data in XML format (the lingua franca of data stored on the Web).

Getting Familiar with Access 2007

If you have never used a database program—including Access—you’ll find Access 2007 very approachable. Using the results of extensive productivity lab tests, Microsoft has completely revamped the user interface in all the Microsoft Office programs. The new Ribbon technology makes it much easier for novice users to get acquainted with Access and easily discover its most useful features. To get a new user jump-started, Microsoft has provided nearly a dozen local database templates that load onto your hard disk when you install Access. In addition, you’ll find many additional database templates available for easy download from the Microsoft Office Web site directly from within
Access. Microsoft plans to continue to add templates after Access 2007 is released to further enhance your productivity.

**Note**
The Microsoft Office Fluent user interface is the term used to describe the new UI for the 2007 Microsoft Office system. The Ribbon is a component of the Microsoft Office Fluent user interface and the term used throughout this book to refer to the Ribbon component.

But if you have used any prior version of Access, you’re in for a big surprise. Menus and toolbars are gone—all replaced by the new Ribbon. The Database window has been replaced by the Navigation Pane. When you first start using Access 2007, you’ll probably notice a decrease in productivity—we certainly did—but it won’t take you long to get comfortable with the new interface. You’ll probably soon discover features that you didn’t know were there. Nearly all the old familiar objects are around—tables, queries, forms, reports, macros, and modules, and you’ll find that the standard design and data views you’ve come to know and love are still around. You’ll also quickly learn that the new Layout and Report views rapidly increase your productivity.

**About This Book**

If you’re developing a database application with the tools in Access 2007, this book gives you a thorough understanding of “programming without pain.” It provides a solid foundation for designing databases, forms, and reports and getting them all to work together. You’ll learn that you can quickly create complex applications by linking design elements with macros or Visual Basic. This book will also show you how to take advantage of some of the more advanced features of Access 2007. You’ll learn how to build an Access project that links directly to an SQL Server database. You’ll also learn how to use Access tools to link to your Access data from the Web or link your Access application to data stored on the Web.

If you’re new to developing applications, particularly database applications, this probably should not be the first book you read about Access. We recommend that you first take a look at *Microsoft Access 2007 Plain and Simple* or *Microsoft Access 2007 Step by Step*.

*Microsoft Office Access 2007 Inside Out* is divided into seven major parts:

- Part 1 provides an overview of Access 2007 and provides you with a detailed look at the new user interface.
- Chapter 1 explains the major features that a database should provide, explores those features in Access, and discusses some of the main reasons why you should consider using database software.
Chapter 2 thoroughly explores the new user interface introduced in the 2007 Office release. The chapter also explains content security, working with the Ribbon and the Navigation Pane, and setting options that customize how you work with Access 2007.

Chapter 3 describes the architecture of Access 2007, gives you an overview of the major objects in an Access database by taking you on a tour through two of the sample databases, and explains the many ways you can use Access to create an application.

Part 2 shows you how to create your desktop application database and tables and build queries to analyze and update data in your tables.

Chapter 4 teaches you how to create databases and tables.

Chapter 5 shows you the ins and outs of modifying tables even after you’ve already begun to load data and build other parts of your application.

Chapter 6 explains how to link to or import data from other sources.

Chapter 7 shows you how to build simple queries and how to work with data in Datasheet view.

Chapter 8 discusses how to design queries to work with data from multiple tables, summarize information, build queries that require you to work in SQL view, and work with the PivotTable and PivotChart views of queries.

Chapter 9 focuses on modifying sets of data with queries—updating data, inserting new data, deleting sets of data, or creating a new table from a selection of data from existing tables.

Part 3 discusses how to build and work with forms and reports in a desktop application.

Chapter 10 introduces you to forms—what they look like and how they work.

Chapters 11, 12, and 13 teach you all about form design in a desktop application, from simple forms you build with a wizard to complex, advanced forms that use embedded forms or ActiveX controls.

Chapter 14 leads you on a guided tour of reports and explains their major features.

Chapters 15 and 16 teach you how to design, build, and implement both simple and complex reports in your desktop application.

Part 4 shows you how to use the programming facilities in Visual Basic to integrate your database objects and make your application “come alive.”

Chapter 17 discusses the concept of event processing in Access, provides a comprehensive list of events, and explains the sequence in which critical events occur.

Chapter 18 covers macro design in depth and explains how to use the new error trapping and embedded macro features.
• Chapter 19 is a comprehensive reference to the Visual Basic language and object models implemented in Access. The final section of the chapter presents two complex coding examples with a line-by-line discussion of the code.

• Chapter 20 thoroughly discusses some of the most common tasks that you might want to automate with Visual Basic. Each section describes a problem, shows you specific form or report design techniques you must use to solve the problem, and walks you through the code from one or more of the sample databases that implements the solution.

• Part 5 is all about using Access tools with the Web.
  • Chapter 21 provides an overview of the ways you can publish data on a Web site.
  • Chapter 22 discusses specific ways to publish your Access applications using Windows SharePoint Services (version 3).
  • Chapter 23 covers the features in Access that handle XML, including importing, updating, and publishing data. The chapter also shows you how to use XML to modify table templates and design custom Ribbons.

• Part 6 covers tasks you might want to perform after completing your application.
  • Chapter 24 teaches you how to automate custom Ribbons, how to use the Performance Analyzer tool, how to design a switchboard, and how to set Startup properties.
  • Chapter 25 teaches you tasks for setting up your application so that you can distribute it to others.

• Part 7 expands on what you learned in Parts 2 and 3 by teaching you the additional skills you need to create client/server applications in an Access project.
  • Chapter 26 shows you how to build a new project file and explains how to define SQL Server tables from the project.
  • Chapter 27 teaches you how to design the project equivalent of desktop queries—views, stored procedures, and functions.
  • Chapter 28 builds on what you learned in Chapters 11–13 and shows you how forms work differently in an Access project.
  • Chapter 29 leverages what you learned in Chapters 15–16 and teaches you how to design reports in an Access project.

• The Appendix explains how to install the 2007 Office release, including which options you should choose for Access 2007 to be able to open all the samples in this book. It also discusses how to install Microsoft SQL Server 2005 Express Edition.
The CD also provides six Articles that contain important reference information:

- Article 1 explains a simple technique that you can use to design a good relational database application with little effort. Even if you’re already familiar with Access or creating database applications in general, getting the table design right is so important that this article is a “must read” for everyone.
- Article 2 is a complete reference to SQL as implemented in desktop databases. It also contains notes about differences between SQL supported natively by Access and SQL implemented in SQL Server.
- Article 3 discusses how to export data and Access objects to various types of other data formats from your Access application.
- Article 4 lists the functions most commonly used in an Access application categorized by function type.
- Article 5 lists the color names and codes you can use in Access.
- Article 6 lists the macro actions you can use in Access.
Now that you are more comfortable with the user interface in Microsoft Office Access 2007, it’s time to dig deeper into exactly what makes up an Access database. This chapter helps you understand the relationships among the main components in Access and shows you how to move around within the database management system.

The Architecture of Access

Access calls anything that can have a name an object. Within an Access database, the main objects are tables, queries, forms, reports, macros, and modules.

If you have worked with other database systems on desktop computers, you might have seen the term database used to refer to only those files in which you store data. In Access, however, a desktop database (.accdb) also includes all the major objects related to the stored data, including objects you define to automate the use of your data. You can also create an Access application using a project file (.adp) that contains the objects that define your application linked to a Microsoft SQL Server database that stores the tables and queries. Here is a summary of the major objects in an Access database:

- **Table.** An object you define and use to store data. Each table contains information about a particular subject, such as customers or orders. Tables contain fields (or columns) that store different kinds of data, such as a name or an address, and records (or rows) that collect all the information about a particular instance of the subject, such as all the information about a department named Housing Administration. You can define a primary key (one or more fields that have a unique value for each record) and one or more indexes on each table to help retrieve your data more quickly.

- **Query.** An object that provides a custom view of data from one or more tables. In Access, you can use the graphical query by example (QBE) facility or you can write SQL statements to create your queries. You can define queries to select, update, insert, or delete data. You can also define queries that create new tables from data in one or more existing tables. When your Access application is a project file connected to an SQL Server database, you can create special types of queries—functions and stored procedures—that can perform complex actions directly on the server.
- **Form.** An object designed primarily for data input or display or for control of application execution. You use forms to customize the presentation of data that your application extracts from queries or tables. You can also print forms. You can design a form to run a macro or a Microsoft Visual Basic procedure in response to any of a number of events—for example, to run a procedure when the value of data changes.

- **Report.** An object designed for formatting, calculating, printing, and summarizing selected data. You can view a report on your screen before you print it.

- **Macro.** An object that is a structured definition of one or more actions that you want Access to perform in response to a defined event. For example, you might design a macro that opens a second form in response to the selection of an item on a main form. You can include simple conditions in macros to specify when one or more actions in the macro should be performed or skipped. You can use macros to open and execute queries, to open tables, or to print or view reports. You can also run other macros or Visual Basic procedures from within a macro.

- **Module.** An object containing custom procedures that you code using Visual Basic. Modules provide a more discrete flow of actions and allow you to trap errors. Modules can be stand-alone objects containing functions that can be called from anywhere in your application, or they can be directly associated with a form or a report to respond to events on the associated form or report.

For a list of events on forms and reports, see Chapter 17, “Understanding Event Processing.”

---

**INSIDE OUT**

**What Happened to Data Access Pages?**

Office Access 2007 no longer supports designing data access pages (DAPs). Usability studies conducted by Microsoft show that DAPs are not a widely used feature within Access, and Microsoft is focusing more of their efforts on Microsoft Windows SharePoint Services for sharing data in corporate environments. To maintain backward compatibility with previous versions, Office Access 2007 will continue to support existing .mdb applications that contain DAPs, but you cannot create new data access pages or modify existing pages from within Access 2007.

Figure 3-1 shows a conceptual overview of how objects in Access are related. Tables store the data that you can extract with queries and display in reports or that you can display and update in forms. Notice that forms and reports can use data either directly from tables or from a filtered view of the data created by using queries. Queries can use Visual Basic functions to provide customized calculations on data in your database. Access also has many built-in functions that allow you to summarize and format your data in queries.
In an Access application, you can design queries to extract data from or update data in tables; you can build forms or reports on tables or queries, and you can write code in macros or modules to automate your application.

Events on forms and reports can trigger either macros or Visual Basic procedures. An event is any change in the state of an Access object. For example, you can write macros or Visual Basic procedures to respond to opening a form, closing a form, entering a new row on a form, or changing data either in the current record or in an individual control (an object on a form or report that contains data). You can even design a macro or a Visual Basic procedure that responds to the user pressing individual keys on the keyboard when entering data!

For more information about using Visual Basic within Access, see Chapter 19, “Understanding Visual Basic Fundamentals,” and Chapter 20, “Automating Your Application with Visual Basic.”

Using macros and modules, you can change the flow of your application; open, filter, and change data in forms and reports; run queries; and build new tables. Using Visual Basic, you can create, modify, and delete any Access object; manipulate data in your database row by row or column by column; and handle exceptional conditions. Using module code you can even call Windows application programming interface (API) routines to extend your application beyond the built-in capabilities of Access.
Exploring a Desktop Database—Housing Reservations

Now that you know something about the major objects that make up an Access database, a good next step is to spend some time exploring the Housing Reservations database (Housing.accdb) that comes with this book. First, follow the instructions at the beginning of this book for installing the sample files on your hard drive. When you start Access 2007, it displays the Getting Started window shown in Figure 3-2.

Figure 3-2  Access 2007 displays the Getting Started window every time you start the program.

Click the More link under Open Recent Database on the right side of the window to see the Open dialog box shown in Figure 3-3. In the Open dialog box, select the file Housing.accdb from the folder in which you installed the sample databases, and then click Open. You can also double-click the file name to open the database. (If you haven’t set options in Windows Explorer to show file name extensions for registered applications, you won’t see the .accdb extension for your database files.)
When you open the Housing Reservations application, it displays a Not Trusted dialog box if you have not followed the instructions in the previous chapter to define the location of the sample files as trusted. If this happens, click the Close button to close the dialog box. The application also briefly displays a copyright information notice and then displays a message box instructing you to open the frmSplash form. Click OK to dismiss this message box, and then Access puts the focus on the frmSplash form in the Navigation Pane. (You can open the frmSplash form if you want to run the application.) Your Access window should look similar to Figure 3-4.

For an existing database, the Navigation Pane is always the same width as it was when you last set it. The title bar of the window normally shows the name of the database that you have open. As you’ll learn later in this book, you can set options in the database to change the title bar of the main Access window to show the name of your application instead of Microsoft Access—we modified the sample database to display the title Housing Reservations on the title bar.
The Navigation Pane displays the objects defined in the Housing Reservations sample database.

As we discussed in the previous chapter, the Ribbon has four main tabs that are displayed at all times. As you explore Access 2007, you’ll see that the Ribbon provides several contextual tabs that appear and disappear as you work with specific database objects and areas of the program. These contextual tabs make available commands that are useful only within the context of the object that has the focus and that object’s current view. For example, it wouldn’t make sense to show you table design commands when you have a table open to display its data (Datasheet view). Likewise, you don’t need datasheet commands when you have a query open in Design view. We’ll explain the various contextual tabs in more detail as we explore the database objects and other areas of Access in the following chapters.

Note
You can rest your mouse pointer on any command or option on the various Ribbon tabs for a second (without clicking the button), and Access displays a ScreenTip to help you discover the purpose of the button.
In the previous chapter, you learned that you can change how Access displays the list of objects in the database by using one of the built-in navigation categories (Object Type, Tables And Related Views, Created Date, and Modified Date) or by defining your own custom navigation category. You also learned that you can filter each navigation category to limit what group Access displays within each category so that you don’t have to wade through a long list to find what you want.

In this chapter, we’ll be exploring each of the types of objects in the Housing Reservations database, so click the Navigation Pane menu at the top of the Navigation Pane and click Object Type under Navigate To Category. Open the menu again and be sure that you have clicked All Access Objects under Filter By Group, as shown in Figure 3-5. Your Navigation Pane should now look similar to Figure 3-4. You can collapse an entire group of objects by clicking on the group’s header bar. If you open the Navigation Pane menu, you can see the names of some custom groups we have defined under Navigate To Category to help organize your work. You’ll learn how to work with groups later in this chapter.

![Figure 3-5](image)

Select Object Type under Navigate To Category and then All Access Objects under Filter By Group to see all objects organized in groups by object type.

Tables

Click the menu bar at the top of the Navigation Pane and select Object Type under Navigate To Category. Open the menu again and select Tables under Filter By Group to display a list of tables available in the Housing Reservations database, as shown in Figure 3-6.
After filtering the Object Type category in the Navigation Pane, you can see only the tables in the Housing Reservations database.

You can open a table in Datasheet view to see the data in the table by double-clicking the table name in the Navigation Pane; or you can open the table in Design view by holding down the Ctrl key and double-clicking the table name. If you right-click a table name, Access displays a shortcut menu, as shown in Figure 3-7, that lets you perform a number of handy operations on the item you selected. Click one of the commands on the shortcut menu, or click anywhere else in the Access window to dismiss the menu.

**INSIDE OUT**

**Turning on Single-Click**

If you want to make it easier to open objects from the Navigation Pane, you can right-click the menu bar at the top of the Navigation Pane and select Navigation Options on the shortcut menu. In the lower-right corner of the Navigation Options dialog box, select Single-Click under Open Objects With and click OK. The examples in this chapter assume you are using the default Double-Click setting.
Figure 3-7 You can access many commands from the shortcut menu for a table in the Navigation Pane.

Table Window in Design View

When you want to change the definition of a table (the structure or design of a table, as opposed to the data in a table), you must open the Table window in Design view. With the Housing Reservations database open, right-click the tblEmployees table and select Design View from the shortcut menu; this opens the tblEmployees table in Design view, as shown in Figure 3-8. (Collapse the Navigation Pane to be able to see the entire width of the design area.) You’ll learn about creating table definitions in Chapter 4, “Creating Your Database and Tables.”

In Design view, each row in the top portion of the Table window defines a different field in the table. You can use the mouse to select any field that you want to modify. You can also use the Tab key to move from left to right across the screen, column to column, or Shift+Tab to move from right to left. Use the Up and Down Arrow keys to move from row to row in the field list. As you select a different row in the field list in the top portion of the window, you can see the property settings for the selected field in the bottom portion of the window. Press F6 to move between the field list and the field property settings portions of the Table window in Design view. Unlike previous versions of Access, pressing F6 again does not immediately move the focus back to the field list. If you press F6 repeatedly, the focus goes to the Navigation Pane, to the Ribbon, and then finally back to the field list.
Access has many convenient features. Wherever you can choose from a limited list of valid values, Access provides a list box to assist you in selecting the proper value. For example, when you tab to the Data Type column in the field list, a small arrow appears at the right of the column. Click the arrow or press Alt+Down Arrow to see the list of valid data types, as shown in Figure 3-9.

You can open as many as 254 tables (fewer if you are limited by your computer’s memory). If you have selected Overlapping Windows in the Access Options dialog box, you can minimize any of the windows to an icon along the bottom of the Access workspace window by clicking the Minimize button in the upper-right corner of the window. You can also maximize the window to fill the Access workspace to the right of the Navigation Pane by clicking the Maximize/Restore button in that same corner. If you don’t see a window you want, you can select it from the list of active windows in the Manage Windows command in the Window group on the Home tab on the Ribbon to bring the window to the front. Click the Close command from the Control Box in the upper-left corner or click the window’s Close button in the upper-right corner to close any window.
Exploring a Desktop Database—Housing Reservations

Figure 3-9 The Data Type list box shows you the available data types.

Table Window in Datasheet View

To view, change, insert, or delete data in a table, you can use the table’s Datasheet view. A datasheet is a simple way to look at your data in rows and columns without any special formatting. You can open a table’s Datasheet view by double-clicking the name of the table you want in the Navigation Pane or by right-clicking on the table name and selecting Open from the shortcut menu. When you open a table in Design view, such as the tblEmployees table shown in Figure 3-8, you can switch to the Datasheet view of this table, shown in Figure 3-10, by clicking the arrow in the Views group on the Ribbon and clicking Datasheet View from the list of available views. Likewise, when you’re in Datasheet view, you can return to Design view by clicking the arrow in the Views group and clicking Design View from the available options. You can also switch views for the table by clicking the various view buttons on the status bar located in the lower-right corner of the Access window. You’ll read more about working with data in Datasheet view in Chapter 7, “Creating and Working with Simple Queries.”
Figure 3-10 Use the Views button on the Ribbon or the individual view buttons on the status bar to switch from Design to Datasheet view.

As in Design view, you can move from field to field in the Table window in Datasheet view by pressing Tab, and you can move up and down through the records using the arrow keys. You can also use the scroll bars along the bottom and on the right side of the window to move around in the table. To the left of the horizontal scroll bar, Access shows you the current record number and the total number of records in the currently selected set of data. You can select the record number with your mouse (or by pressing F5), type a new number, and then press Enter to go to that record. You can use the arrows on either side of this record number box to move up or down one record or to move to the first or last record in the table. You can start entering data in a new record by clicking the New (Blank) Record button on the right.

Queries

You probably noticed that the Datasheet view of the tblEmployees table gave you all the fields and all the records in the table. But what if you want to see only the employee names and addresses? Or maybe you would like to see in one view information about employees and all their confirmed room reservations. To fill these needs, you can create
a query. Open the Navigation Pane menu, click Object Type under Navigate To Category if it isn't already selected, and then click Queries under Filter By Group to display a list of queries available in the Housing Reservations database, as shown in Figure 3-11.

**TROUBLESHOOTING**

*Why does my table have extra rows in the lower half of the screen like a spreadsheet?*

You might notice in Figure 3-10 that there are extra rows beneath our existing records, and this grid very much resembles a spreadsheet. This is a departure from previous versions of Access that displayed only one row for each record in that table plus one for a new record. For tables in Datasheet view in Access 2007, the remainder of the space in the application window is filled with dummy rows that you cannot click into. In essence, these extra rows are simply placeholders for possible future records. It might be confusing to think of this grid as a spreadsheet because of its appearance, but you must remember that Access is not a spreadsheet. What you see is only a visual aid and does not denote actual records in the tables.

*Figure 3-11* When you filter object types by queries in the Navigation Pane, Access displays a list of only the queries in the Housing Reservations database.
You can open a query in Datasheet view by double-clicking the query name, or you can open it in Design view by clicking on the query to select it, and then pressing Ctrl+Enter. You can also right-click a query and click the Open or Design View command on the shortcut menu.

**Query Window in Design View**

When you want to change the definition of a query (the structure or design, as opposed to the data represented in the query), you must open the query in Design view. Take a look at one of the more complex queries in the Housing Reservations query list by scrolling to the query named qryFacilityReservations. Select the query and then press Ctrl+Enter to display the query in Design view, as shown in Figure 3-12. Collapse the Navigation Pane to see more of the width of the query design.

![Figure 3-12](image)

The qryFacilityReservations query in Design view shows data from three tables being linked.

In the upper part of a Query window in Design view, you see the field lists of the tables or other queries that this query uses. The lines connecting the field lists show how Access links the tables to solve your query. If you define relationships between two tables in your database design, Access draws these lines automatically when you include both tables in a query design. See Chapter 4 for details. You can also define relationships when you build the query by dragging a field from one field list and dropping it on another field list.
In the lower part of the Query window, you see the design grid. The design grid shows fields that Access uses in this query, the tables or queries from which the fields come (when you select Table Names in the Show/Hide group on the Ribbon’s Design tab), any sorting criteria, whether fields show up in the result, and any selection criteria for the fields. You can use the horizontal scroll bar to bring other fields in this query into view. As in the Design view of tables, you can use F6 to move between the upper and lower portions of the Query window, but the F6 key also cycles through the Query window, the Navigation Pane, and the Ribbon.

You can learn how to build this type of complex multiple-table query in Chapter 8, ‘Building Complex Queries.’ You can find this query used in the Housing Reservations database as the source of data for the fsubFacilityReservations form.

**Query Window inDatasheet View**

On the Design or Home tab on the Ribbon, click the View button to run the query and see the query results in Datasheet view, as shown in Figure 3-13. You can also right-click the query tab and click Datasheet View on the shortcut menu.

![Figure 3-13](image)

The Datasheet view of the qryFacilityReservations query shows you fields from three related tables.

The Query window in Datasheet view is similar to a Table window in Datasheet view. Even though the fields in the query datasheet shown in Figure 3-13 are from three different tables, you can work with the fields as if they were in a single table. If you’re designing an Access application for other users, you can use queries to hide much of the complexity of the database and make the application simpler to use. Depending on how you designed the query, you might also be able to update some of the data in the...
underlying tables simply by typing new values in the Query window as you would in a Table window in Datasheet view.

**Forms**

Datasheets are useful for viewing and changing data in your database, but they're not particularly attractive or simple to use. If you want to format your data in a special way or automate how your data is used and updated, you need to use a form. Forms provide a number of important capabilities.

- You can control and enhance the way your data looks on the screen. For example, you can add color and shading or add number formats. You can add controls such as list boxes and check boxes. You can display ActiveX objects such as pictures and graphs directly on the form. And you can calculate and display values based on data in a table or a query.

- You can perform extensive editing of data using macros or Visual Basic procedures.

- You can link multiple forms or reports by using macros or Visual Basic procedures that are run from buttons on a form.

Click the menu bar at the top of the Navigation Pane, click Object Type under Navigate To Category, and then click Forms under Filter By Group to display a list of forms available in the Housing Reservations database, as shown in Figure 3-14.

You can open a form in Form view by double-clicking the form name in the Navigation Pane. You can also open the form in Design view by clicking the form to highlight it, and then pressing Ctrl+Enter. Finally, you can right-click a form name and click a command on the shortcut menu. To create a new form, use the commands in the Forms group of the Create tab on the Ribbon.

**Form Window in Design View**

When you want to change the definition of a form (the structure or design, as opposed to the data represented in the form), you generally must open the form in Design view. As you'll learn in Chapter 12, "Customizing a Form," you can also set a form property to allow you to make changes in Layout view while you are designing the form. Take a look at the frmEmployeesPlain form in the Housing Reservations database. To open the form, scroll through the list of forms in the Navigation Pane to find the frmEmployeesPlain form, click the form to select it, then press Ctrl+Enter. This form, shown in Figure 3-15, is designed to display all data from the tblEmployees table. Don't worry if what you see on your screen doesn't exactly match Figure 3-15. In this figure, we opened the field list on the right so that you can see some of the main features of the Form window in Design view.
When you filter Object Type by Forms, Access displays a list of only the forms in the Housing Reservations database.

The large window in the center is the form design window where you create the design of the form. When you first open this form in Design view, you should see the Form Design Tools collection of two contextual tabs, Design and Arrange, on the Ribbon just to the right of Database Tools. These tabs are the action centers of form design—you’ll use the tools here to add and arrange the design elements of your form.

On the right side of the window shown in Figure 3-15, you can see a field list for this form. This form gets its information from a query called qryEmployees that selects all the fields in the tblEmployees table and then sorts the rows by last name and first name. If you don’t see the field list, click the Add Existing Fields command in the Tools group of the Design contextual tab. You can resize this window by clicking on the far left edge of the box and dragging it to a new width toward the left side of the screen. When your mouse pointer is positioned over the title bar, it changes to cross arrows. Click the title bar and drag it to the left and down to undock the window from the right side and position it where you would like. When you undock the Field List window, it becomes a window that floats on top of the design area. When you read about form design in Chapter 11, “Building a Form,” you’ll see that you can drag a field from the field list to place a control on the form that displays the contents of the field.
When you open the frmEmployeesPlain form in Design view, you can modify its design. After you place all the controls on a form, you might want to customize some of them. You do this by opening the property sheet displayed in Figure 3-16. To see the property sheet, click the Property Sheet button in the Tools group of the Design tab. In Figure 3-16 we collapsed the Navigation Pane to show more of the property sheet.

The property sheet always shows the property values for the control selected in the form design. (The property sheet can also display the properties for the form or any section on the form.) Click the tabs at the top of the property sheet to display all properties or to display only properties for formats, data, or events. In the example shown in Figure 3-16, we clicked the text box named EmployeeNumber, near the top of the form, to select it. If you click this text box and then scroll down the list of properties for this text box, you can see the wide range of properties you can set to customize this control. As you learn to build applications using Access, you’ll soon discover that you can customize the way your application works by simply setting form and control properties—you don’t have to write any code.
Figure 3-16 The property sheet lets you set individual properties for a form, form sections, or controls on the form.

If you scroll to the bottom of the property list, or click the Event tab, you’ll see a number of properties that you can set to define the macros or Visual Basic procedures that Access runs whenever the associated event occurs on this control. For example, you can use the Before Update event property to define a macro or procedure that performs additional validation before Access saves any changes typed in this control. You can use the On Click or On Dbl Click event properties to perform actions when the user clicks the control. If you need to, you can even look at every individual character the user types in a control with the On Key event properties. As you’ll discover later, Access provides a rich set of events that you can detect for the form and for each control on the form.

You might have noticed that Access made available all the commands and options in the Font group of the Design tab when you selected the EmployeeNumber control. When you select a text box on a form in Design view, Access enables the list boxes in this group to make it easy to select a font and font size, and it also enables buttons that let you set the Bold, Italic, and Underline properties. Underneath these buttons are three buttons that let you set text alignment: Align Text Left, Center, and Align Text Right. You can also set the font and fill colors using buttons in this group.
Form Window in Layout View

Access 2007 introduces a new view for forms called Layout view. If you have the frmEmployeesPlain form open in Design view from the previous section, you can switch to Layout view by right-clicking the frmEmployeesPlain tab and clicking Layout View on the shortcut menu. You should now see the form in Layout view, as shown in Figure 3-17. This unique view for forms gives the developer a fast and easy way to create and modify form designs.

Unlike Design view, Layout view enables you to work with the various control elements and form sections using existing live data. If, for example, you need to resize a text box to fit the available data, you do not have to continually switch back and forth between Form and Design view to see if your size change works effectively—you actually see data in the text box while resizing the control. This new What-You-See-Is-What-You-Get (WYSIWYG) form-authoring view provides the best of both worlds by combining the ability to change the structure of the data entry form at the same time you’re accessing actual data.

In Layout view, if you have grouped a set of controls you can move them around the form design grid together to maintain their proximity and orientation to one another. In this sample form, we grouped all the controls in the first column in a stacked layout.
In Figure 3-18, you can see that we’re dragging the Email Name field down below the Office Location field. A horizontal bar designates where Access will place the control after you release the mouse button. Because these controls are grouped, Access places the Email Name field and its label below the Office Location field and aligns them perfectly.

![Figure 3-18](image)

**Figure 3-18** You can move a control within a group in Layout view, and Access keeps them perfectly aligned.

### Form Window in Form View

To view, change, insert, or delete data via a form, you can use Form view. Depending on how you’ve designed the form, you can work with your data in an attractive and clear context, have the form validate the information you enter, or use the form to trigger other forms or reports based on actions you take while viewing the form. You can open a form in Form view by right-clicking the form’s name in the Navigation Pane and clicking Open on the shortcut menu. If you still have the frmEmployeesPlain form open in Layout view from the previous section, you can go directly to Form view by clicking the arrow in the Views group and then clicking Form View.

Figure 3-19 shows a complex form that brings together data from three tables and loads the related employee picture from a file on your hard drive onto a screen that’s easy to use and understand. This form includes all the fields from the tblEmployees table. You can tab or use the arrow keys to move through the fields. You can click the Personal Info tab to see additional information about the current employee. You can experiment with filtering by selection to see how easy it is to select only the records you want to see. For example, you can click in the Department field, select the department name, click the Selection button in the Sort & Filter group on the Home tab, and then click Equals “Selected Department” (where “Selected Department” is the department name you selected) to display records only for the current department.
There are four other ways to look at a form: Datasheet view, PivotTable view, PivotChart view, and Print Preview. You can select the Datasheet view by clicking the arrow in the Views group and clicking Datasheet View to see all the fields in the form arranged in a datasheet—similar to a datasheet for a table or a query. When a form has been designed to display data in a PivotTable (similar to a spreadsheet) or graphed in a PivotChart, you can also select these views with the View button. You can click the Microsoft Office Button, move your mouse pointer to Print, and then click Print Preview on the submenu to see what the form will look like on a printed page. You’ll read more about Print Preview in the next section.

**Reports**

If your primary need is to print data, you should use a report. Click the menu bar at the top of the Navigation Pane to open the Navigation Pane menu and click Object Type under Navigate To Category. Then open the menu again and click the Reports option under Filter By Group to display a list of reports available in the Housing Reservations database, as shown in Figure 3-20.
You can filter the Navigation Pane to show only a list of the reports in your database.

Although you can print information in a datasheet or a form, neither of these formats provides the flexibility that reports do when you need to produce complex printed output (such as invoices or summaries) that might include many calculations and subtotals. Formatting in datasheets is limited to sizing the rows and columns, specifying fonts, and setting the colors and gridline effects. You can do a lot of formatting in a form, but because forms are designed primarily for viewing and entering data on the screen, they are not suited for extensive calculations, grouping of data, or multiple totals and subtotals in print.

Report Window in Design View

When you want to change the definition of a report, you must open the report in Design view. In the report list for Housing Reservations, click on the rptEmployeesPlain report to select it, and then press Ctrl+Enter to see the design for the report, as shown in Figure 3-21. Don’t worry if what you see on your screen doesn’t exactly match Figure 3-21. We clicked the Add Existing Fields command on the Design tab under Report Design Tools to display the Field List window.

The large window in the center is where you create the design of the report. This report is designed to display all the information about employees by department. Notice that Design view for reports is similar to Design view for forms. (For comparison, see Figure 3-15.) Reports provide additional flexibility, allowing you to group items and to total them (either across or down). You can also define header and footer information for the entire report, for each page, and for each subgroup on the report. When you first open this report in Design view, you should see three new contextual tabs appear on the Ribbon just to the right of Database Tools under Report Design Tools: Design, Arrange, and Page Setup. These contextual tabs are the action centers of report design—you’ll use the tools here to add the design elements you want.
On the right side of the window shown in Figure 3-21, you can see the field list for this report. This list shows all the fields returned by the record source for the report, qryRptEmployees—all the fields from the tblEmployees table and related fields from the tblDepartments table. If you don’t see the field list, click the Add Existing Fields command in the Tools group on the Design contextual tab. You can resize this window by clicking on the far left edge and dragging it to a new width toward the left side of the screen. When your mouse pointer is positioned over the title bar, it changes to cross arrows. Click the title bar and drag it to the left and down to undock the window from the right side and position it where you would like. When you undock the Field List window, it becomes a window that floats on top of the design area. When you read about report design in Chapter 15, “Constructing a Report,” you’ll see that you can drag a field from the field list to place a control on the report that displays the contents of the field.
After you place all the controls on a report, you might want to customize some of them. Do this by opening the property sheet, which you can see on the right side of the screen in Figure 3-22. To see the property sheet, click the Property Sheet command in the Tools group of the Design tab. In Figure 3-22 we collapsed the Navigation Pane so you can see more of the property sheet.

The property sheet lets you set individual properties for a report, report sections, or controls on the report.

The property sheet always shows the property settings for the control selected in the Report window. (The Property Sheet pane can also display the properties for the entire report or any section on the report.) In the example shown in Figure 3-22, we clicked the text box named EmployeeNumber to select it. If you click this text box, you can see that Access displays the EmployeeNumber field from the tblEmployees table as the control source (input data) for this control. You can also specify complex formulas that calculate additional data for report controls.

You might have noticed that Access made available some additional commands and options in the Font group of the Design tab when you selected the EmployeeNumber control. When you select a text box in a report in Design view, Access enables list boxes in the Font group that make it easy to select a font and font size. Access also enables buttons that let you set the Bold, Italic, and Underline properties. Underneath these buttons are three buttons that set text alignment: Align Text Left, Center, and Align Text Right. You can also set font and fill colors using buttons in this group.
Reports can be even more complex than forms, but building a simple report is really quite easy. Access provides report wizards that you can use to automatically generate a number of standard report layouts based on the table or query you choose. You’ll find it simple to customize a report to suit your needs after the report wizard has done most of the hard work. You’ll learn how to customize a report in Chapter 15 and Chapter 16, “Advanced Report Design.”

**Report Window in Print Preview**

To see what the finished report looks like, click the arrow in the Views group and then click Print Preview when you’re in the Report window in Design view. You can also right-click the report name in the Navigation Pane and then click Print Preview on the shortcut menu. Figure 3-23 shows a report in Print Preview.

![Print Preview](image)

Figure 3-23 When you open a report in Print Preview, Access shows you how the report will look when you print it.
Access initially shows you the upper-left corner of the report. To see the report centered in full-page view in Print Preview, click the Zoom control in the lower-right corner of the status bar where it says 100%. Clicking that button automatically adjusts the zoom level percent so that you can see a full page of the report. To see two pages side-by-side, click the Two Pages button in the Zoom group of the Print Preview contextual tab. This gives you a reduced picture of two pages, as shown in Figure 3-24, and an overall idea of how Access arranges major areas of data on the report. Unless you have a large monitor, however, you won’t be able to read the data. Click the More Pages button and then click an option (Four Pages, Eight Pages, or Twelve Pages) to see more than two pages. When you move the mouse pointer over the window in Print Preview, the pointer changes to a magnifying glass icon. To zoom in, click over an area that you want to see more closely. You can then use the scroll bars to move around in the magnified report. Use the Zoom control on the status bar to magnify or shrink your view. Access also provides several output options such as Word or Excel in the Data group of the Print Preview tab.

Figure 3-24. Click the Two Pages button to see two pages side-by-side in Print Preview.

Report Window in Layout View

Access 2007 introduces a new view for reports called Layout view. This unique view for reports gives the developer a fast and easy way to create and modify report designs.
Unlike Design view, Layout view enables you to work with the various control elements and report sections using existing live data. Similar to Layout view for forms, this new WYSIWYG report-authoring view provides the best of both worlds by combining the ability to change the structure of the report at the same time you're accessing the data.

To open the rptEmployeesPlain in Layout view, find the report in the Navigation Pane, right-click the report name, and click Layout View on the shortcut menu. Figure 3-25 shows the report in Layout view. In Figure 3-25 we collapsed the Navigation Pane so you can see more of the report design grid.

![Figure 3-25](Image)

Figure 3-25 Similar to Layout view for forms, Layout view in reports lets you adjust design elements while looking at the data from your database.

Just like Layout view for forms, if you have grouped a set of controls, you can move them around the report grid together to maintain their proximity and orientation to one another. In Figure 3-26, you can see that we’re dragging the Birth Date field above the Email field. A horizontal bar designates where Access will place the control after you release the mouse button. Because these controls are grouped, Access places the Birth Date field and its label above the Email field. The two controls swap places and align perfectly.
Figure 3-26  Access makes it easy to move controls around within a group in Layout view.

Report Window in Report View

In addition to Layout view, Access 2007 includes another new view for reports called Report view, an interactive view for reports that can respond to control events, much like data entry forms. If you have the rptEmployeesPlain report open in Layout view from the previous section, you can switch to Report view by right-clicking the Employees tab and clicking Report View on the shortcut menu. You should now see the report in Report view, as shown in Figure 3-27.

Figure 3-27  When a report is in Report view, you can program controls to respond to mouse clicks to open a related form.
Previous versions of Access treat reports on screen as static. After you open a report on the screen, you can only view the report or print it. Report view in Access 2007 gives you the ability to interact with the report through filters to drill down to specific records and then print only this smaller group of records. You can include command buttons on your reports with Access 2007 and program the buttons to respond to a mouse click in Report view. In the new Report view, you can designate controls that respond to events as hyperlinks to provide a visual cue that an event occurs when clicking that control. In Figure 3-27, for example, observe that the Employee Number field looks like a hyperlink with a blue line underneath the data. (In Figure 3-27 we have scrolled down the records to show John's information.) Clicking the Employee Number field opens the frmEmployeesPlain form to display all information for that specific employee so that you can make any necessary changes. After closing the form and returning to the report, click the Refresh All command in the Records group of the Home tab on the Ribbon to see any changes you made to the data using the form reflected in the report. In Figure 3-27 you can see that the frmEmployeesPlain form opens on a new tab because we are using the tabbed interface.

Close the Form window and the Report window to return to the Navigation Pane.

**Macros**

You can make working with your data within forms and reports much easier by triggering a macro action. Office Access 2007 provides more than 70 actions that you can include in a macro. They perform tasks such as opening tables and forms, running queries, running other macros, selecting options from menus, and sizing open windows. You can also group multiple actions in a macro and specify conditions that determine when each set of actions will or will not be executed by Access.

Open the Navigation Pane menu and make sure Object Type is selected under Navigate To Category. Then open the menu again and click Macros under Filter By Group to display a list of macros available in the Housing Reservations database, as shown in Figure 3-28. You can run a macro by right-clicking the macro name in the Navigation Pane and clicking Run on the shortcut menu. To open a macro in Design view, right-click the macro name and click Design View on the shortcut menu. To create a brand new macro, click the New Object Macro button in the Other group of the Create tab on the Ribbon.

Macros are a great way to learn about the basics of responding to events and automating actions in an Access database. However, for any application that you intend to distribute to others, you should use Visual Basic to handle events and automate actions. Nearly all the sample databases use Visual Basic exclusively. You can take a look at the design of a macro example in the Housing Reservations database by selecting the SampleMacro macro in the Navigation Pane, and then pressing Ctrl+Enter. Access opens the Macro window in Design view, as shown in Figure 3-29.
You can filter the Navigation Pane to show the Macros list in the Housing Reservations database.

Figure 3-28

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Macro Name</th>
<th>Condition</th>
<th>Action</th>
<th>Comment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Greeting</td>
<td>4-Hour[Now()]</td>
<td>MsgBox</td>
<td>Test for very late at night</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>...</td>
<td>StopMacro</td>
<td>If was true, then done</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6-Hour[Now()]</td>
<td>MsgBox</td>
<td>Test for early in the day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>...</td>
<td>StopMacro</td>
<td>If was true, then done</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12-Hour[Now()]</td>
<td>MsgBox</td>
<td>Display good morning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>...</td>
<td>StopMacro</td>
<td>If was true, then done</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>18-Hour[Now()]</td>
<td>MsgBox</td>
<td>Display good afternoon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>...</td>
<td>StopMacro</td>
<td>If was true, then done</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>24-Hour[Now()]</td>
<td>MsgBox</td>
<td>Display good night!</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

You can design multiple macro actions within a single macro object and give each one a name in the first column. Any unnamed lines following a line with a name specified all
belong to the named macro. In the second column, you can optionally specify a condition test that must be true for the macro command on that line to execute. You can use a continuation indicator (...) on subsequent lines to specify additional commands that should also execute when the condition is true. You select the action you want to run from a list in the Action column and set the arguments required for the action in the Action Arguments section in the lower part of the design window. Some of the limitations of macros include limited ability to branch to other actions and very limited ability to loop through a set of actions.

If you want to see what this macro does, click the Run button in the Tools group of the Design contextual tab to execute it. You should see a greeting message appropriate to the time of day appear on your screen. To learn more about events and the macro design facility, see Chapter 18, “Automating Your Application with Macros.” You can find one sample application on the companion CD that is automated entirely using macros—WeddingListMC.accdb.

Close the Macro window now to return to the Navigation Pane.

**Modules**

You might find that you keep coding the same complex formula over and over in some of your forms or reports. Although you can build a complete Access application using only forms, reports, and macros, some actions might be difficult or impossible to define in a macro. If that is the case, you can create a Visual Basic procedure that performs a series of calculations and then use that procedure in a form or report.

If your application is so complex that it needs to deal with errors (such as two users trying to update the same record at the same time), you must use Visual Basic. Because Visual Basic is a complete programming language with complex logic and the ability to link to other applications and files, you can solve unusual or difficult programming problems by using Visual Basic procedures.

Version 2 of Access introduced the ability to code Basic routines in special modules attached directly to the forms and reports that they support. You can create these procedures from Design view for forms or reports by requesting the Code Builder in any event property. You can edit this code behind forms and reports by clicking View Code in the Tools group on the Design contextual tab when you have a form or report open in Design view. See Chapters 19 and 20 for details. In fact, after you learn a little bit about Visual Basic, you might find that coding small event procedures for your forms and reports is much more efficient and convenient than trying to keep track of many macro objects. You’ll also soon learn that you can’t fully respond to some sophisticated events, such as KeyPress, in macros because macros can’t access special additional parameters (such as the value of the key pressed) generated by the event. You can fully handle these events only in Visual Basic.

Open the Navigation Pane menu and click Object Type under Navigate To Category. Open the menu again and click Modules under Filter By Group to display a list of modules available in the Housing Reservations database, as shown in Figure 3-30. The Housing Reservations database has several module objects that contain procedures
that can be called from any query, form, report, or other procedure in the database. For example, the modMedian module contains a function to calculate the median value of a column in any table or query. The modUtility module contains several functions that you might find useful in your applications.

Figure 3-30  You can filter the Navigation Pane to display only the Visual Basic modules in the Housing Reservations database.

From the Navigation Pane, you can create a new module by clicking the arrow below Macro in the Other group of the Create tab on the Ribbon, or you can open the design of an existing module by double-clicking the name of the module in the Navigation Pane. In addition, you can right-click on the module name in the Navigation Pane and click Design View on the shortcut menu. In a module, you can define procedures that you can call from a macro, a form, or a report. You can also use some procedures (called functions) in expressions in queries and in validation rules that you create for a table or a form. You'll learn how to create procedures in Chapter 19.

Right-click the modUtility module in the Navigation Pane and then click Design View to open the Visual Basic Editor window containing the Visual Basic code in the module. Use the Procedure list box (in the upper right of the Code window) to look at the procedure names available in the sample. One of the functions in this module, IsFormLoaded, checks all forms open in the current Access session to see whether the form name, passed as a parameter, is one of the open forms. This function is useful in macros or in other modules to direct the flow of an application based on which forms the user has open. You can see this function in Figure 3-31.

Note that the Visual Basic Editor runs in an entirely different application window from Access, and it still uses the classic menus and toolbars found in earlier versions of Access. Click the View Microsoft Office Access button on the far left of the toolbar to easily return to the Access window.
Figure 3-31 The Visual Basic Editor window displays the IsFormLoaded function in the modUtility module.

This completes the tour of the objects in the Housing Reservations sample database. Close the Visual Basic Editor window if you still have it open, return to the Access window, and close the database.

Exploring a Project File—Conrad Systems Contacts

Microsoft Access 2000 introduced an advanced facility that allows you to create a project file (with an .adp extension) that contains only your forms, reports, macros, and modules. When you create a new project file, you can specify an SQL Server database to support the project. SQL Server stores the tables and queries you use in the application that you design in the project. You can connect your project file to a Microsoft SQL Server version 6.5 database on a server or to a version 7.0 or later database on a server or on your desktop. Included with the 2007 Microsoft Office release is a special edition of SQL Server 2005, the Microsoft SQL Server Desktop Engine (MSDE), that you can install to run on your desktop computer.
You will see available tables in the server database as table objects in your project. You will also see views, functions, and stored procedures as query objects. Access 2007 includes special table and query editors to allow you to work directly with the objects in SQL Server. Your project file also contains forms, reports, macros, and modules that are virtually identical to those you develop in a desktop database (.accdb).

To see the differences in tables and queries in a project file, start Access and then open the Contacts.adp sample project file.

**INSIDE OUT**

Opening the Sample Project File

To be able to open the Contacts.adp file successfully, you must first install Microsoft SQL Server 2005 Express Edition or have access to an SQL Server edition that allows you Create authority. You can download SQL Server 2005 Express Edition from www.microsoft.com/sql/editions/express/default.mspx. You'll need to attach the sample database files to a computer running a server version of Microsoft Windows, such as Microsoft Windows Server 2003, and possibly modify the connection properties of the sample project so that Access knows where to find the tables and queries required by the project. See the Appendix, "Installing Your Software," for details about how to install and start SQL Server 2005 Express Edition. See Chapter 26, "Building Tables in an Access Project," for details about setting project connection properties. If you are unable to perform these steps at this time, you can still read through this section to gain an understanding of some of the differences in project files.

**Tables**

Open the Navigation Pane menu and select Object Type under Navigate To Category. Open the menu again and select Tables under Filter By Group to see all the tables defined in the SQL Server database connected to the project. Figure 3-32 shows you the tables in the ContactsSQL database that is connected to the Conrad Systems Contacts project file.

As you can see, the Navigation Pane in a project file looks very similar to the one in a desktop database. You can see one additional object type listed on the Navigation Pane menu—Database Diagrams. SQL Server allows you to create a diagram of all the tables in your database, and the diagram shows you the relationships that you have defined between the tables.

Select the tblContacts table in the Navigation Pane, and press Ctrl+Enter to see the table in Design view, as shown in Figure 3-33.
Figure 3-32 The Navigation Pane in a project file shows the tables in the database on SQL Server.

Figure 3-33 When you open a table in Design view in an Access project, you’re editing the table in the database on SQL Server.
As you can see, the table design grid in an Access project is very similar to the one in a desktop database. (See Figure 3-8.) In an SQL Server database, fields are called columns. SQL Server supports a wider variety of data types than does a desktop database. Many of the data types are identical, but they have different names in SQL Server. For example, the int data type in SQL Server is the same as the Long Integer data type in a desktop database. If you want, you can click the Datasheet View option in the Views group to switch to Datasheet view, but you’ll find that Datasheet view in an Access project is identical to that in a desktop database. You can learn all the details for creating tables in a project in Chapter 26. Close the table design grid to return to the Navigation Pane.

Views, Functions, and Stored Procedures

Although all query objects in a desktop database are called simply “queries,” you’ll find that SQL Server stores three different types of objects—views, functions, and stored procedures—that Access displays when you click Queries under Filter By Group on the Navigation Pane menu, as shown in Figure 3-34.

A view returns a filtered view of data from one or more tables. A function can return a table, or it can perform a calculation and return a single value, much like a Visual Basic function. The difference is that a function that you see in the queries list in a project file
Navigation Pane executes on SQL Server, and the server returns the result to your project. A stored procedure can be as simple as an SQL statement that returns rows from one or more tables, or it can contain a complex program written in Transact-SQL that tests conditions and perhaps updates one or more tables in your database.

In many cases, you can design a view, function, or stored procedure using a query designer that is similar to the designer you use in a desktop database. To see an example of a query in a project file’s query designer, scroll down the list of queries in the Conrad Systems Contacts sample project file, select qryContactProductsForInvoice in the Navigation Pane, and then press Ctrl+Enter. Access displays the query in Design view, as shown in Figure 3-35.

![Figure 3-35](image)

**Figure 3-35** When you open a query in the query designer in an Access project, you’re editing the view, function, or stored procedure stored in the server database.

This query is a function that returns columns from three tables. The query designer in an Access project is similar in some ways to the designer in a desktop database (see Figure 3-12). You can see the tables used in the query in the top pane of the designer window. In the center pane are the columns (fields) used in the query, but the columns are listed vertically here instead of horizontally as in the desktop database designer. In the bottom pane, you can see the SQL statement that defines this query on the server. You can close this pane if you like and work exclusively in the designer. Access reflects any change you make on the design grid by modifying the displayed SQL. When you become more expert in SQL, you can also modify the SQL statement, and Access changes the top two panes accordingly.

You can learn about the details of creating a query in an Access project in Chapter 27, “Building Queries in an Access Project,” on the companion CD. For details about the SQL database language, see Article 2, “Understanding SQL,” also on the companion CD.
You can close the query design grid now. As noted earlier, the forms, reports, macros, and modules in a project file are virtually identical to those in a desktop database. You can learn about the minor differences for forms and reports in Chapter 28, “Designing Forms in an Access Project,” and Chapter 29, “Building Reports in an Access Project,” both on the companion CD.

The Many Faces of Access

Access is not only a powerful, flexible, and easy-to-use database management system, but it is also a complete database application development facility. You can use Access to create and run, under the Windows operating system, an application tailored to your data management needs. Access lets you limit, select, and total your data by using queries. You can create forms for viewing and changing your data. You can also use Access to create simple or complex reports. Forms and reports inherit the properties of the underlying table or query, so in most cases you need to define such properties as formats and validation rules only once. Figure 3-36 gives you an overview of all the ways you can use Access to implement an application.

Figure 3-36 Although Access is primarily a desktop database system, you can use Access to build client/server applications.
The four sections in the figure illustrate ways you can implement an Access application, as follows:

- Using the desktop database facility or an Access project file linked to a local copy of MSDE, you can create a stand-alone application used by a single person.
- You can place a data-only desktop database on a file server or in a database in SQL Server and link the tables over a network to multiple desktop databases so that several users can share the same application.
- You can design your database in SQL Server and connect to the server over a network from multiple Access project files running on different computers.
- Finally, you can create Web pages that connect to data that you designed using Access.

To borrow a cliché, the possibilities are endless . . .

In this chapter, you’ve had a chance to look at the major objects in the Housing Reservations and Conrad Systems Contacts sample databases. You’ve also been introduced to the architecture of Access and the wide range of ways that you can use Access. You should be feeling comfortable that you can learn to use Access at the level appropriate to solve your database application needs. In the next chapter you’ll learn how to create new databases and the tables you need to store your data.”
Symbols and Numbers

& (ampersand)
concatenating expressions with, 440
concatenating fields or strings with, 362
displaying available characters in this position, 655
* (asterisk)
all fields indicator, 352, 507
designating next character as fill character, 653, 655
multiplying expressions with, 365
operator precedence for, 367
record indicator icon, 390
as wildcard, 169, 406, 449
\ (backslash)
operator precedence for, 367
rounding numeric expressions with, 365
used to display character immediately following, 653, 655
{ } (brackets)
added to SELECT statements in earlier Access versions, 861
defining list of comparison characters in, 449
delimiting names for SQL Server, 1460, 226
displaying text in color specified, 654, 656
enclosing object name in, 372, 919
including query parameters in, 449
inserted automatically in form control reference, 901
placing around field names, 362
when to enclose names in, 989–989
^ (caret)
arithmetic operator, 365
operator precedence for, 367
testing character position in project file, 449
... (continuation indicator), 130
, (comma) as thousands separator, 653
$ (dollar sign) in format string, 653, 655
-- (double hyphens) for single line comments, 1528
<< (double left arrow) button, 593
** (double quotation marks)
added to single text values, 355
embedding text with, 653, 655
placing delimited object names in, 1460
string constants with, 362
>> (double right arrow) button, 593
= (equal sign)
entering expressions after, 763
equal comparison, 168, 169
indicating equal joins, 442
! (exclamation mark)
forcing left alignment, 653, 655
not trusted macro actions marked with, 918
preceding object name with, 989–990
separating table and field names with, 372, 373
/ (forward slash)
dividing numeric expressions with, 365, 373
operator precedence for, 367
*/ ("forward slash"). 1528
*/ ("forward slash"). 1528
> (greater than sign)
comparing values with, 168, 169
returning query results with, 1503, 442
>= (greater than or equal to sign)
comparing values with, 168, 169
returning query results with, 1503, 442
right arrow button, 593
<= (less than or equal to sign)
comparing values with, 168, 169
returning query results with, 1503, 442
< (less than sign)
comparing values with, 168, 169
indicating lowercase characters, 655
left arrow button removing fields from Selected Fields list, 593
returning query results with, 1503, 442
~ (minus sign)
arithmetic operator, 365
as character in format string, 653, 655
operator precedence for, 367
() (parentheses)
adding to expressions, 370
as characters in format string, 653, 655
expression evaluation within, 367
scalar functions in, 1542
% (percentage sign)
multiplying value by 100 and including trailing percent sign, 654
wildcard character for project file, 449
indicating decimal in numbers and currency, 653
rules for using names, 990
separating table and field names with, 372, 373
@ placeholder character, 655
* (plus sign)
  adding expressions with, 365
  as character in format string, 653, 655
  concatenating project file expressions with, A40
  expanding subdatasheets, 387–390, 461
  operator precedence for, 367
# (pound sign)
  placeholder character, 653
  as wildcard, 169, A49
? (question mark) wildcard, 169, A49
' ' (single quotation marks), string constants with, 362
_ (underscore)
  default placeholder character, 171
  using names in brackets with embedded, 989
  wildcard character for project file, A49
<> (unmatched) values, returning queries with, 1503, A42
0 placeholder character, 653
3-D object color, 565

A
.accdb files
  about, 6
  backing up, 205–207
  building database queries in query designer for, 1491
  components of application files, 978
  creating compiled version of, 272
  DAO model with desktop applications, 981
  databases vs. projects, 1450
  packaging and signing, 1338
  publishing or moving to SharePoint Services, 1210, 1212
  return DAO recordset for Recordset property, 1104
  user-level security unsupported for, 12
  viewing database recordsets for action queries, 1523
.accde files, 1330
.accdr files, 1329
Access. See also applications; projects; user interface (UI)
  ActiveX controls available in, 7–8
  application development with, 13–15
  architecture
    application architecture, 978–981
    overview, 99–101
  backward compatibility with .mdb format, 979
  building client/server applications with, 137–138
  changes to user interface, 21
  checking for updates, 97
  color names in, A93–A99
  converting from previous release, 1358–1360
  compatibility with earlier versions, 1358–1359
  conversion issues, 1359–1360
  creating SharePoint list from within, 1198–1207
  adding record to table, 1200–1201
  creating custom list, 1203–1207
  using existing list template, 1199–1203
  data access pages, 14
  data formats compatible with, 9
  data types for, 138
  domain functions, 1057
  event-driven applications in, 867–869
  examples of installed ActiveX controls, 726–727
  executing commands, 1027–1028
  exporting data to SharePoint Services, 1182–1186
  file formats for, 6
  importing SharePoint list to, 1186–1191
  integration with Windows SharePoint Services, 1162–1163
  linking SharePoint list to, 1191–1195
  macro actions not trusted in, 916–918
  managing queries in, 417
  newsgroups for, 17
  ODBC standard and, 253–255
  opening for first time, 19–20
  processing objects in, 560–562
  RDBMS features of, 6–13
  relationship between Visual Basic and, 942, 950
  smart tags in, 664
  spreadsheet data compatible with, 273
  support for existing DAPs, 14, 100
  switching to database software, 15–17
  use of SQL in
    brackets or parentheses added by Access, A34, A61
    for database commands, A33
    IN clause, A34, A46
    parameter data types and equivalents, A53
    using XML data in, 1136–1137
  Web development environment in, 1127
  working with Visual FoxPro tables in, 268
Access 2007 Developer Extensions and Runtime, 1328, 1340
Access applications. See applications
Access Database Engine (ACE)
  DAO and, 982
  no SQL modifications by, A61
Access desktop databases. See .accdb files; databases
Access Options dialog box, 87–97
  automatic display of Macro Name and Condition columns, 891
categories
  Add-Ins, 95
Advanced, 93  
Current Database, 88–89  
Customize, 94  
Datasheet, 90  
Object Designers, 90–91  
Popular, 87–88  
Proofing, 92  
Resources, 96–97  
Trust Center, 96  
checking for keyboard shortcut duplicates, 1306  
Compact On Close check box, 251  
control IDs for built-in controls, 1277  
Document Window Options section of, 84–85, 89  
enhancing performance of linked data, 293–294  
Layout view  
  disabling, 1304  
  enabling for database, 671  
  making changes affecting all datasheets, 1143–1144  
  modifying  
    global settings in, 87–97  
    keyboard options for datasheets and forms, 392–393  
  opening, 27, 84  
Perform Name AutoCorrect options, 192–193  
Quick Access Toolbar  
  customizing commands on, 28–31  
  revising command and macro order, 32  
setting  
  database startup properties, 1310–1312  
  overlapping or tabbed document views, 109  
  project form options, 1549–1551  
Show Add-In User Interface Errors check box, 1274  
table design options  
  for projects, 1488–1490  
  setting, 191–195  
Use Windows-Themed Controls On Forms check box, 559, 596, 692  
year formatting options, 191–192  
Access projects. See projects  
accl files, 153  
ACE (Access Database Engine)  
  DAO and, 982  
  no SQL modifications by, A61  
Action Failed dialog box, 912–913, 914  
action queries, 485–514. See also append queries; delete queries; make-table queries; update queries  
  about, A33, A71  
  appending data, 485, 502–507  
  creating append queries, 503–506  
  running append queries, 506–507  
  SQL overview for append queries, A73–A75  
  using stored procedures for, 1519–1522  
cautions about viewing database or project recordsets for, 1523  
defined, 347  
deleting data  
  about delete queries, 485  
  testing rows affected by delete queries, 507–510  
  using delete query, 510–511  
  fields discarded in conversion from select queries, 490  
  icons for, 490  
make-table queries, 485, 495–502  
  about, 495–496  
  creating, 496–500  
  defined, 485  
  limitations of, 501  
  running, 500–502  
syntax variants for, A34  
troubleshooting, 512–514  
types of, 485  
updating data, 486–495  
  about update queries, 485  
  converting select to update query, 488  
  multiple fields, 491–493  
  running update queries, 489–491  
  testing data updates, 486–487  
actions. See macro actions  
activating  
  Date Picker for text box controls, 727  
  hyperlinks, 398  
Active Server Pages. See ASPs (Active Server Pages)  
ActiveX controls  
  Calendar, 729–730  
  defined, 726  
  examples of installed, 726–727  
  selecting, 727–728  
  using in distributed applications, 1068  
ActiveX Data Objects (ADO)  
  architecture of, 985–987  
  Find method in, 1104  
  introduction of, 981  
  ODBC and, 254  
  recordsets  
    difficulties using, 982  
    working with, 1001–1005  
  using with dynamic Web pages, 1159, 1160  
  using as interface for ODBC databases, 255  
ActiveX objects. See also ActiveX Data Objects (ADO)  
  displaying in forms, 533–535  
  methods for controls, 7–8  
  size limitations of, 201  
  using with dynamic Web pages, 1159, 1160  
Add A Group option, 794  
Add A Sort option, 794
Add Generated Key button (Table Analyzer Wizard), 237
Add Table dialog box, 1486, 1496
Add Watch dialog box, 957
add-in security restrictions, 38
Add-Ins category (Access Options dialog box), 95
addresses
e-mail
   finding in associated table, 317–318
   selecting source for, 315–316, 333–334
   selecting table containing, 316–317, 332–333
entering
   individual, 321–322
   or selecting in form, 548
ADO. See ActiveX Data Objects (ADO)
ADODB data model, 985, 986–987
ADOX data model, 985, 986–987
.adp files, 981. See also Contacts.adp project file; projects
   about, 132–133, 1448
   application engine used by, 978–979
   cautions viewing project recordsets for action queries, 1523
   connecting to new SQL Server database, 1448–1451
   installing SQL Server 2005 Express Edition to build, 1349
   projects vs. databases, 1450
   using with SQL Server, 6
views, functions, and stored procedures in, 135–137
Advanced category (Access Options dialog box), 93
Advanced Filter button, 385, 402
Advanced Filter Design window, 403–405
Advanced Filter/Sort window, 556
advanced form design
   basing on multiple-table query, 686–691
   conditional formatting, 716–719
   creating multiple-page forms, 723–726
   example of, 520
   illustrated, 725, 726
   page break control, 724, 725
   planning, 724
   setting Cycle property, 726, 1080
   displaying values in option group, 714–716
embedded subforms, 692–713
   creating, 703–706
   creating main form, 707–710
   defining subdatasheet subform, 710–713
   designating main form source, 706–707
   designing innermost, 696–701
   displaying complex information with, 1577
   editing controls in inner forms, 709
   setting up first level subform, 701–702
   sizing controls in Form view, 704
   specifying query data source for, 693–696
uses for, 692–693
PivotChart forms, 730–734
   building, 731–732
designing, 538–539, 730
   embedding linked PivotChart, 730, 733–734
PivotTable forms, 538–539
tab controls, 719–723
   about, 530
   property settings for, 723
   setting Page Index property, 721
types of, 719
working with, 720–722
advanced report design, 811–863
   adding PivotChart to report, 860–863
   adding values across group, 837–838
   building queries for complex reports, 812–813
calculating
   grand totals, 839–840
   percentages, 840, 843–844
totals on expressions, 838
   concatenating text strings, 841–842
   conditional formatting, 848–851
custom Ribbon for sample reports, 811
   defining grouping and sorting criteria, 816–818
   embedding subreports, 741–744, 851–859
   hiding redundant values, 840–841, 842
   numbering report lines, 845–848
   performing calculations on detail line, 833–837
   print date and page numbers on, 830–833
   section properties, 819–822
   structuring basics in Report Wizard, 813–815
AfterUpdate events, 931, 937
aggregate expressions, 838
aggregate functions
   about, A35
   available as Group By options in query designer, 1506
   defining in totals queries, 435–436, 437
   limitations updating, 1508
   using in SELECT queries, A35
aggregate queries, 1505
alerts
   Message Bar, 35
   notifying if SharePoint list data modified, 1196
   turning off warning smart tags, 771
   warning messages for reserved words or function names, 159
aliases
   assigning to query field lists, 496, 497
   specifying for column with ORDER BY clause, A62
alignment
   control layouts for column, 637–638
effect of screen resolution on, 611
Font group options for, 583
forcing left, 653, 655
form label, 619–621
snapping items to grid, 618, 619
tabbing across page boundary with correct, 1080–1082
All tab (Property Sheet window)
  listing of control properties, 666–669
  listing of form properties, 676–680
Allow Additions property, 674, 1354–1355
Allow Deletions property, 674, 1554–1555
Allow Design Changes property, 589
Allow Edits property, 674, 1354–1355
Allow Layout view, 589
ALTER PROCEDURE statement, 1527
Always Use Event Procedures check box (Access Options dialog box), 906
American National Standards Institute (ANSI), 253
ampersand (&) character
  concatenating expressions with, A40
  concatenating fields or strings with, 362
  displaying available characters in this position, 655
anchoring controls in Layout view, 623–624
AND operator
  constructing multiple constraint expressions with, 1481
  expressing in query designer, A55
  results using OR vs., 357–359
truth tables for, A56
ANSI (American National Standards Institute), 253
Append dialog box, 505
append queries, 502–507
  command on Design contextual tab for, 488
  creating, 503–506
  defined, 485
  icon for, 490
  make-table vs., 502
  running, 506–507
SQL overview for, A73–A75
stored procedures for appending data, 1519–1522
append values queries
  inserting parameters in, 1520–1522
  syntax of, 1519–1520
application design worksheet
  subjects, A14, A15, A16
tasks, A9, A10, A12
application engine in Access, 978, 979
application shortcuts, 1331–1334
  adding parameters to target file name, 1332
  command-line options for, 1333–1334
  setting properties for, 1331–1332, 1334
applications. See also .accdb files; automating
  Active X controls in, 1068
  building client/server, 137–138
compiling
  before production, 1316–1317
  errors with procedures within procedures, 947
  flagging undeclared variables during, 963
  setting VB options for, 949–950
  version of .mdb or .accdb files, 272
controlling flow with forms, 517–518
custom Ribbons for, 1266–1279, 1283–1302
  adding built-in groups to tabs, 1276–1279
  building well-formed XML for, 1270–1271
  creating VBA callbacks, 1296–1297
  customizing tabs, 1274–1275
disabling unused tabs, buttons, and groups, 1283–1284
displaying errors, 1274
dynamically updating elements, 1297–1299
hiding existing elements, 1271–1272
hiding options on Microsoft Office Button, 1300–1301
loading images into custom controls, 1299–1300
loading XML for, 1284–1287
setting focus to tab, 1301–1302
testing, 1270, 1272–1273
using RibbonX attributes, 1287–1296
working with USysRibbons table, 1266–1269
XML code listing for, 1292–1294
designing database, A3–A31
  charting task flow, A4
  constructing application, A5
data analysis, A13–A16
database design concepts, A16–A28
designing prototype and user interface, A5
identifying data elements, A5
identifying tasks, A4
organizing data, A5
overview, A3–A4, A6
process-driven and data-driven design, A7
rationale of order-entry examples for, A8
strategies for, A7–A13
testing, reviewing, and refining, A6
understanding work process, A4
when to break design rules, A28–A31
developing in Access, 13–15
disabling Layout view, 1304
distributing, 1319–1340
  creating application shortcut, 1331–1334
  encrypting database with password, 1334–1336
  execute-only databases, 1329–1330
  packaging and signing database, 1336–1339
  understanding runtime mode execution, 1328–1329
  using linked tables in desktop database, 1320–1328
  working with Access 2007 Developer Extensions and Runtime, 1328, 1340
applications, continued
  event-driven Access, 867–869
  execute-only
    distributing databases as, 1329–1330
    preventing users switching to Design view for, 671
    property settings for, 1310–1312
    runtime mode and, 1328–1329
  fine-tuning with Performance Analyzer, 1302–1303
  keeping Connect property current for, 297
  macro action running another, A118
  macros in, 887–940
    actions not trusted, 916–918
    automating tasks with, 918–938
    brackets inserted in reference to control on form, 901
    conditional expressions in, 900–901
    converting to Visual Basic, 938–940
    defining multiple actions, 895–897
    embedded, 901–907
    grouping, 897–900
  Hourglass automatically restored by, 897
  recommendations about, 890
  saving, 893–894
    temporary variables, 907–910
  testing, 894–895
  trapping errors, 910–915
  uses of, 887, 888–889
  working with Macro window, 890–893
  maintaining data integrity, 413
  previewing reports for sample, 738
  starting and running, 1310–1316
    intercepting Ctrl+F4 with AutoKeys macro, 1315–1316
    setting database startup properties, 1310–1312
    starting and stopping application, 1312–1315
  switchboard forms for, 1305–1310
  checking for duplicate shortcuts, 1305–1306
  designing in Switchboard Manager, 1306–1310
  illustrated, 1305
  upsizing to projects, 533
architecture
  Access, 99–101
    Access application, 978–981
  ADO, 985–987
  DAO, 981–985
  form, 560–561
  RibbonX, 1287, 1301
  Web, 1137–1139
archiving data
  with append query, 503–506
  deleting inactive data with delete queries, 510–511
  argument boxes in Macro window, 892–893
arguments
  AskEdit macro, 933–934
  DatePart function interval, 365
  entering macro, 890–891
  SyncWeddingAndCity macro, 926
arithmetic expressions, 364–370
  concatenating Null values in, 364, 420
  operator precedence in, 367
  operators used in, 364–365
  using DateDiff function in, 365–366
arithmetic functions, A85–A86
  Arrange contextual tab, 564, 618
  arrays declared with ReDim statement, 974–975
  arrow keys, 392
  Ascending button, 402, 409
  ascending sort order, 378
  ASP.NET, 1160–1161, 1162
  ASPs (Active Server Pages)
    creating dynamic Web pages with, 1158
    designed for IIS, 1159
    exporting XML data as, 1249, 1250
  Assets template, 152, 153
  assignment statements, 952–953
asterisk (*)
  all fields indicator, 352, 507
  designating next character as fill character, 653, 655
  multiplying expressions with, 365
  operator precedence for, 367
  record indicator icon, 390
  as wildcard, 169, 406, A49
  asterisk icon, 390
  attachment controls, 530–533
  Attachment data type, 8–9, 158, 160–161
  attachment fields
    indexes undefinable using, 189
    inserting files in, 546
  Attachments dialog box, 532
attributes
  associated with Ribbon controls and callbacks, 1290–1292
  defined, 5
  list of Ribbon control, 1288–1289
  authentication errors using SQL Server 2005 Express with Vista, 258
  Authentication Mode page (Microsoft SQL Server Installation Wizard), 1353–1354
  Auto Expand property, 605
  Auto Indent check box (Options dialog box), 948–949
  Auto Resize property, 622
  Auto Syntax Check check box (Options dialog box), 948
  AutoCalc button, 475
  AutoCorrect feature, 92, 193
AutoCorrect smart tag, 233
AutoExec macro
about, 890
starting applications with, 1310, 1312
using, 896
AutoFilter button, 475
AutoFormat
applying to reports in Layout view, 807–809
defining control defaults as, 681
AutoFormat Wizard, 681
AutoKeys macro, 1052, 1315–1316
automatically processing e-mail replies, 313, 314
automating
applications
controlling tabbing on multiple-page form, 1080–1082
linking to data in other form or report, 1098–1094
complex tasks, 1105–1114
calculating stored value in table, 1114
linking to related task, 1098–1099, 1109–1114
triggering data task from related form, 1105–1109
data entry assistance, 1053–1071
filling in related data, 1053–1057
fixing e-mail hyperlink, 1061–1062
handling NotInList event, 1058–1061
providing graphical calendar, 1063–1068
working with linked photos, 1069–1071
data selection, 1082–1097
filtering one list with another, 1095–1097
multiple-selection list boxes, 1082–1086
providing custom query by form, 1086–1093
selecting from summary list, 1094–1095
data validation, 1071–1080
checking for overlapping data, 1078–1080
checks for possible duplicate names, 1071–1073
maintaining special unique value constraint, 1077–1080
testing for related records when deleting record, 1074–1075
verifying prerequisite before saving record, 1075–1077
form processes, 561, 562
with macros, 918–938
Hourglass automatically restored after running, 897
including subform and subreport references, 920–921
referencing form and report objects, 919
referencing properties for forms and reports, 919–920
tasks using, 887, 888–889
using references to form and report controls and properties, 920
reports, 1114–1124
drawing border on, 1118–1121
filtering dynamically on opening, 1121–1124
using up partial page of mailing labels, 1115–1118
AutoNumber data type
about, 158, 160
converting, 228
unavailable for data collection if primary key, 310, 311
AutoNumber fields
query update limitations for, 469
using as primary keys, 549
Avery label formats, 754, 1117
Avg function, 437
axis for PivotCharts, 481
B
Back Color property, 647
Back Up Database command, 205
background color for reports, 788–789
Background Compile check box (Options dialog box), 949, 950
background missing on Web page, 1150
backing up
application data, 1315
before running delete queries, 510
data before using update queries, 489
databases, 205	
tables, 206–207
text queries, 1526
backslash (\)
operator precedence for, 367
rounding numeric expressions with, 365
used to display character immediately following, 653, 655
backward compatibility with .mdb format, 979
BeforeUpdate events, 931, 937
BEGIN/END statements, 1531, 1532
BETWEEN operator, 169, 360–361
BETWEEN predicate, A35
bigint data type, H461
Bitmap Image Object submenu, 534
bitmap objects, 535
Blank Database button
about, 21
connecting to existing SQL Server database from, 1453
creating new project from, 1448, 1449
illustrated, 22
Blank Database icon, 148
Blank Form button, 609
Blank Report button, 790–791
blank reports, 760
Blank.accdb database template
creating, 196–197
saving in appropriate template folder, 197–199
blocking harmful content, 35–36

Boolean operators
  as selection criteria, 356
  truth tables for, A56
  using in query designer, A55

Border Style property, 675–676

bound combo box properties, 604–605

bound controls, 566

bound forms
  editing data on, 884
  server filters with forms bound to in-line functions, 1558

bound object frame, 534

brackets ([])
  added to SELECT statements in earlier Access versions, A61
  defining list of comparison characters in, A49
  delimiting names for SQL Server, 1460, A36
  displaying text in color specified, 654, 656
  enclosing object names in, 372, 919
  including query parameters in, 449
  inserted automatically in form control reference, 901
  placing around field names, 362
  putting object names in, 372
  when to enclose names in, 989–990

Break In Class Module check box (Options dialog box), 949

Break On All Errors check box (Options dialog box), 949

Break When Value Changes check box (Add Watch dialog box), 957

Break When Value Is True check box (Add Watch dialog box), 957

breaking design rules, A28–A31
  capturing point-in-time data, A29–A31
  creating report snapshot data, A31
  improving performance of critical tasks, A29

breakpoints. See also debugging
  cautions using, 957
  inserting in code, 951–952
  output statements in Immediate window, 954–956
  preventing debugging, 1312

browsers. See Web browsers

bugs
  error message when saving in-line function, 1516
  incorrect positioning of fields on form grid, 627
  mailto: protocol prefix, 1062
  missing background images in Form Wizard, 595, 690
  opening properties affecting color from Custom Properties dialog box, 729

Build button, 172, 729

building simple input forms. See also Form Wizard
  with design tools, 563–589
    adding new query for property, 576–578
    creating and setting form dimensions, 563–567
    customizing colors and reviewing design, 587–589
    dragging fields to form, 578–580
    font options for, 582–583
    label properties for, 585–586
    moving and sizing controls, 580–581
    setting and displaying properties of, 586–587
    setting object properties, 574–578
    setting text box properties, 584–585
    specifying record source, 566–567
    text box properties for, 584–585
  Form Wizard, 593–597
    creating basic form, 593–597
    modifying basic form, 598–601
    quick create commands for, 590–593

built-in views for Windows SharePoint Services, 1173

business rules
  ensuring in queries for data integrity, 417–419
  verifying prerequisite data to satisfy, 1075–1077

Button Face color, 642

buttons
  Add Generated Key, 237
  Advanced Filter, 385, 402
  Ascending, 385, 402, 409
  assigning macros custom images, 30, 31
  associating macro with, 923–924
  AutoCalc, 475
  AutoFilter, 475
  AutoFormat, 807–808
  Blank Database, 1448, 1449, 1453
  Blank Form, 609
  Build, 172, 729
  Clear All Sorts, 402
  Close, 675
  Collapse Field/Expand Field, 476
  Combo Box, 569
  command, 517, 535–536
  Controls group, 568–572, 583–584
  Datasheet Formatting Dialog Box Launcher, 1145
  Datasheet view of, 385
  Debug toolbar, 956
  defining several at a time from Controls group, 714
  Descending, 402, 409
  Dialog Box Launcher, 395
  disabling
    Module and Class Module, 1330
    unused, 1283–1284
  Discard My Changes, 1232
  Export To Excel, 476
Field List, 476
Filter, 385, 402
Font group, 582–583
Form view, 120
Formulas, 475
Group, 642–643
Group By, 1505
Hide Details, 476, 477
Insert SQL, 1530
Install Now, 1346
linking to related task with, 1098–1099, 1109–1114
List Box, 569
Microsoft Office, 24
Minimize/Maximize, 108, 109, 675
More Pages, 124
Move To SharePoint, 1212
New Object, 890
Print Preview Zoom, 124
Property Sheet, 176, 476
Query Design, 348, 415
Query Wizard, 348, 1524
Refresh Pivot, 476
Remove, 633
Retry All My Changes, 1232
Save, 151
Set Control Defaults, 680–681
Set Maximum Record Count, 1548, 1549, 1568
Set Unique Identifier, 237
SharePoint List, 1183, 1184, 1187, 1203, 1204
Show As, 476
Show Details, 476
Show Top/Bottom, 475
Shutter Bar Open/Close, 47
Sort Descending, 385
Special Effect, 583, 645–646
Stop Refresh, 1548, 1568
Subtotal, 475
switching views with Maximize/Minimize, 109
Table Design, 155, 1458
Tabular, 800–801
To Grid, 618
Toggle Filter, 402
Totals, 435
Two Pages, 124, 125
Use Control Wizards, 602
Views, 110
Visual Basic Editor window, 945
Work Online, 1230, 1231
XML File, 1246
Zoom, 737, 738

C

calculated values
in reports, 830–840
adding print date and page numbers, 830–833
adding values across group, 837–838
avoiding #Error in calculated control, 836
performing calculations on detail line, 834–837
storing in table, 1114
calculating
data on detail line, 833–837
grand total using percentages, 840, 843–844
stored value, 1114
totals on expressions, 838
totals and filtering, 441–442
calendar
ActiveX Calendar control, 729–730
creating SharePoint list from Access for, 1199–1203
providing Visual Basic, 1063–1069
Calendar Active X control, 729–730
call stack, 959–960
Call Stack dialog box, 960
Call statement, 1017
callbacks
creating for Ribbon in VBA, 1296–1297
Ribbon control, 1288
RibbonX, 1290–1292
calling
functions
domain, 1057
syntax for, 1542
MsgBox function in macro, 911
candidate keys, A20
Can Grow property, 1119
Caption property
displaying, 586, 587
for fields, 377
renaming fields and changing, 216
captions
correcting PivotCharts data field, 482
displaying property for, 586, 587
setting label properties for form, 585–586, 587
capturing point-in-time data, A29–A31
caret (^)
arithmetic operator, 365
operator precedence for, 367
testing position of characters in project file, A49
Cartesian product
defined, 414
queries returning, 498
Cascade Delete Related Fields check box (Edit
Relationships dialog box), 184, 185
Cascade Update Related Fields check box (Edit Relationships dialog box), 184, 185
cascading updates/deletes support, 1218

case
indicating upper- and lowercase characters, 655
insensitivity of character string comparisons, 170
categories
Access Options dialog box, 87–97
Add-Ins, 95
Advanced, 93
Current Database, 88–89
Customize, 94
Datasheet, 90
Object Designers, 90–91
Popular, 87–88
Proofing, 92
Resources, 96–97
Trust Center, 96

macro action
building custom menu and executing menu commands, A112
controlling display and focus, A113–A114
displaying messages or beeping, A115
executing queries, A106–A107
handling errors, A118
modifying objects, A115–A117
opening/closing Access objects, A102–104
overview, A101
printing data, A105–A106
running another application, A118
searching for data, A111
setting values, A109
testing conditions and controlling action flow, A107–A108
Trusted column, A101
using temporary variables, A117

Navigation Options dialog box
customizing, 58
display order for, 61
working with groups in custom, 59–63

Navigation Pane
displaying single, 81
hiding custom groups on, 67–69
Object Type, 61, 82, 105–106, 114, 115
Tables And Related Views, 49–52
Unrelated Objects, 51–52
using custom, 53–55
viewing categories from submenus, 77

Category/Description field, 604–605
cells, setting options in Datasheet Formatting dialog box for, 1146

Change event
description of, 872
preventing endless loop with, 873
characters. See also placeholder characters; and Symbols
and numbers section
fill character embedded in format string, 653
formatting
Date/Time, 658–660
Number and Currency, 653–654
Text data type, 655–656
input mask
list of, 170–171
listing of, 170–171
missing, 174
storing formatting characters with data, 173
using to separate table and field names, 372, 373
valid field name, 159
Visual Basic data-typing, 962
wildcard characters for string comparisons, A49
check boxes. See also specific Access check boxes
about, 526–527
changing Yes/No field to, 605–607
graphic image size unchanged in, 615
option buttons and toggle buttons vs., 606
check constraints
adding, 1478–1480
allowing Null values with, 1482
creating multiple, 1481–1482
defined, 1477–1478
deleting, 1480
maintaining special unique value constraint, 1077–1080

Check Constraints tab (Properties dialog box), 1478
child tables, 185
Choose Builder dialog box, 905, 906
Choose Name dialog box, 1466–1467
chtProductSales form, 538
Class Module button, 1330
class modules, 1009–1016
defined, 943, 1009
form and report, 944
Private statement in, 972–973
Property Get procedure, 1010–1012
Property Let procedure, 1012–1014
Property Set procedure, 1014–1016
Public statement in, 973–974
signaling declared events in, 1022–1023
understanding, 1009–1010
using Event statement in, 971–972

clean-up code for Contacts.aacdb, 1312–1315
Clear All Sorts button, 402
Clear MacroError action, 916
CLI (Common Language Interface), 254
client computers
  advantages of local copies of applications, 1320
  browsers executing scripts on, 1138
  setting up desktop database for, 1319, 1320–1328
client/server applications
  building, 137–138
  designing data fetching for, 1321
  setting up desktop database for, 1319, 1320–1328
Clipboard
  copying and pasting fields, 222–224
  cutting and moving objects to, 210
  Office vs. Windows, 395
  pasting text into Page Header section, 845
Close Button property, 675
closing
  Access objects with macro, A102
  database and compacting, 251
  events for form and report, 870–871
  property sheets in Design view, 576
  SQL designer, 1530
  windows without Close button, 675
clustered indexes, 1471–1472, 1474
code. See also complex Visual Basic code examples
  ASP script generated in VBScript, 1158
  AutoKeys macro, 1316
  book's convention for displaying long lines of, 925
  disabled in databases downloaded to untrusted locations, 1225
  hexadecimal code for color names, A93–A99
  HTML tag coding, 1129–1131
  indenting Visual Basic, 948–949
  sample database exit, 1312–1315
  viewing executed code in Call Stack dialog box, 959–960
Code window (VBE), 945, 946–947
Collapse Field button, 476
collapsing
  fields, 476
  Navigation Pane
    to desired width, 47
    group in, 49
    hides contextual tab, 739
  Ribbon, 45
Collect Data Through E-Mail Messages wizard. See collecting data via e-mail
Collecting Data Using E-Mail Options dialog box, 313–315
collecting data via e-mail, 304–345. See also HTML forms;
  InfoPath forms
  about, 304–305
  allowing multiple rows per reply, 314–315
  collecting new or updated data, 308–309, 329–330
  data types unavailable, 311
e-mail addresses
  finding in associated table, 317–318
  selecting source for, 315–316, 333–334
  selecting table containing, 316–317, 332–333
  HTML forms
    filling out, 322–325
    InfoPath forms vs., 327
    selecting recipients for, 320–321
    using, 306–308
  Hyperlink data types in, 321
  including primary key in data collection, 310
  InfoPath forms
    filling out, 337–341
    HTML forms vs., 327
    using, 328–329
    warning messages for, 335–336
    writing message for, 334–335
  instructing recipient to click reply, 319
  messages
    customizing, 318–319, 334–335
    managing and resending, 343–345
    moving HTTP-based messages to Outlook Inbox, 325
    previewing in Outlook, 321–322
    sending, 336–337, 340–341
  replies
    accepting multiple, 314
    date to stop processing, 315
    discarding, 314
    manually processing, 321–322, 341–343
    processing automatically, 312–313, 325–326
    specifying data to collect, 309–310, 330–331
    wizard's summary of process, 320
collections
  about, 978
  Access architecture and, 980
  established by DBEngine object, 983
  QueryDefs, 984
  referencing Forms and Report, 919
  referencing objects within, 987–988
  Report Design Tools, 759, 761
  structure of DAO, 983, 984
  TableDefs, 984
  TempVars, 991, A117
color
  Button Face, 642
  customizing input form, 587–589
  formatting control border, 583–584
  highlighting form items with, 645–646
  names and codes for, A93–A99
  report background, 788–789
color, continued
selecting, A93
setting
3-D object, 565
default datasheet, 1144
form grid dot, 564–565
system, 647
Column Fields drop zone, 474
column headings for crosstab queries, 445–446
Column Width lookup property, 244
Column-Name clause, A35–A37
columns
about, 99
adding labels in simple reports, 770–771
aligning stacked control layout, 637–638
attributes stored in, 5
data types in SQL Server, 1461–1464
Datasheet view of, 385
defined, 4
defining properties for stored procedure, 1523–1524
moving or deleting, 150
project
adding definitions to, 1465–1467
allowing Null values with check constraints, 1482
database fields vs., 1458
defining, 1459–1465
defining as primary key, 1470–1471
defining for table, 1475–1477
properties not visible in SQL Server 7.0, 1470
properties of SQL Server table, 1467–1470
sql_variant data type, 1465
user-defined data types, 1465
selecting query designer, 1499–1450
SharePoint list
about, 1168
adding, 1175–1179
browser viewing of custom, 1205
setting properties for, 1176, 1177
sizing for combo box, 605
specifying query options for ordering and sorting, 1503–1504
SQL Server naming conventions for, 1460
Columns tab (Page Setup dialog box), 558, 753–754
COM add-ins, 95
ComboBox button, 569
ComboBox Wizard, 602, 604–605
combo boxes
about, 528
advantages of using, 601
allowing for vertical scroll bar in, 244
associating macro with, 923
building, 602–605
choosing values resolved with stored procedure parameter, 1564, 1575–1576
conditional formatting of, 716
defined, 240
designing for InfoPath data entry, 337–338
filtering one list with another in, 1095–1097
formatting properties for data display, 651–661
illustrated, 529
keyboard shortcuts for, 543
manually changing text boxes to, 602
retrieving fields from current row of, 1055
sizing columns for, 603
viewing properties created by Combo Box Wizard, 604
watching in Datasheet view, 241–242
width unadjusted with Size To Fit command, 614
comma (,) as thousands separator, 653
command buttons
defined, 517
placing in forms, 535–536, 537
command-line options for application shortcuts, 1333–1334
commands
Back Up Database, 205
Compile, 1317
control padding, 638–640
Copy, 207
Count Values, 804–805
Cut, 210, 394–395
Datasheet, 592–593
executing
Access, 1027–1028
with DoCmd object, 1005
menu commands with macro action, A112
from table’s shortcut menu, 106–107
Visual Basic in Immediate window, 952–953
ExportXML, 1256
External Data tab import and export, 1183
found on Design contextual tab for update queries, 488
ImportXML, 1256
Microsoft Office Button, 25–27
Multiple Items, 592
New Item, 1169
Option Button, 714
Quick Access Toolbar, 27–30
adding to from Ribbon, 34
inserting separators on, 33
revising order on, 32
quick create
forms built with Form Wizard vs., 593
input forms, 590–593
location on Ribbon, 590
Report, 775–777
RunMacro, 939
screen resolution and alignment, 611
ScreenTips for, 104
SharePoint
  Create Column, 1176
  Modify This View, 1176, 1177
Size To Fit, 612–616
SQL underlying Access database, A33
Table Templates, 153–154
Update Status Bar Text Everywhere ContactID Is Used, 233
used in SQL data definition queries, 463
comments, 1528
COMMIT TRANSACTION statements, 1535
Common Language Interface (CLI), 254
compacting databases, 250–251
companion CD
ContactsDataCopy.accdb sample database, 305
ContactsSQL.mdl file, 1456
database files not digitally signed on, 35
sample files
  modifying table design for, 204
  on, 23, 103
  working with project files, 1494–1495
TasksEmailCollection.acdb sample database, 305
Visual Basic functions on, 371
comparison operators
  Between, In, and Like operators in, 360–361
criteria selection with AND and OR, 357–360
comparison predicate, A37–A38
comparison values in field validation expressions, 168
Compatibility tab (Properties dialog box), 1334
Compile command, 1317
Compile On Demand check box (Options dialog box), 949–950
compiling
  application before production, 1316–1317
ers with procedures within procedures, 947
flagging undeclared variables during, 963
setting Visual Basic options for, 949–950
version of .mdb or .accdb files, 272
Completing Microsoft SQL Server 2005 Setup page
  (Microsoft SQL Server Installation Wizard), 1357–1358
complex data
  about, 8
  manipulating data types with DAO, 997–1000
  Multi-Value Lookup Fields and, 245
complex queries, 413–483
  about, 413
  assigning data types for parameters, 451
  building query on query, 421–424
  controlling output of, 452–454
  creating in Query Wizard, 431–434
  customizing properties, 452–463
data definition queries, 463
defining subdatasheets, 458–462
designing PivotCharts, 478–483
filtering, 440–442
  including parameters in, 449–452
  joins
    inner, 414–421
    outer, 425–431
locking records in, 462
protecting data integrity, 413
saving results in temporary table, 496
setting up for PivotTables, 469–473
types of
crosstab queries, 442–449
pass-through queries, 463
totals queries, 435–449
union queries, 463–468
update limitations for fields in, 468–469
working with unique records and values, 454–458
complex task automation, 1105–1114
calculating stored value, 1114
linking to related task, 1098–1099, 1109–1114
triggering data task from related form, 1105–1109
complex Visual Basic code examples, 1030–1050
examining all error codes, 1044–1050
code listing, 1045–1047
  explanation of code listing, 1047–1050
randomly loading data, 1030–1044
code listing, 1032–1040
  explanation of code listing, 1041–1044
calculating stored value, 1114
calculating stored value, 1114
linking to related task, 1098–1099, 1109–1114
triggering data task from related form, 1105–1109
complex Visual Basic code examples, 1030–1050
examining all error codes, 1044–1050
code listing, 1045–1047
  explanation of code listing, 1047–1050
randomly loading data, 1030–1044
code listing, 1032–1040
  explanation of code listing, 1041–1044
computer requirements for Microsoft Office, 1341
concatenating
desktop database expressions with & character, A40
example of concatenated text fields, 363
fields or strings with & character, 362, A40
Null values in expressions, 364, 420
project file expressions with + character, A40
text strings, 841–842
Condition column (Macro window), 891, 921, 922
conditional expressions
  macros use of, 900–901
  using DLookup and IsNull functions in macros, 930–931
conditional formatting
  using in forms, 716–719
  using in reports, 848–851
Conditional Formatting dialog box, 717, 848
Configuration Options page (Microsoft SQL Server Installation Wizard), 1354, 1355
confirmation dialog boxes
append query, 507
closing deletion, 396
delete query, 510
Microsoft Office Genuine Advantage, 145, 146
pasting, 396
update query, 489, 491
verifying rows pasted into new table, 500
Connect dialog box, 1214
Connect property, 297
connections
choosing server, 1450–1451, 1454
security for SQL Server, 1450–1451, 1455
startup code to verify and correct linked table, 1323–1328
Conrad Systems Contacts sample database. See Contacts.accdb database
Const statement, 965
constants
declaring with Const statement, 965
double or single quotation marks enclosing text string, 362
Visual Basic, 961–978
built-in for macro actions, 1028
data types supported, 961–963
defining scope of, 963–964
storing data as, 961
constraint expressions
adding, 1478–1479
examples of, 1481–1482
multiple, 1481
constructing applications, A5
contact events. See also events
defined, A10
contact labels. See mailing labels
contacts, defined, A10
Contacts template, 152
Contacts.accdb database
about, A7
exploring tables in, 133–135
main switchboard form for, 535–536, 537
migrating to SQL Server with, 216
opening project file, 133
Contacts.adp project file
connecting to database, 1492
opening, 133
steps required to work with, 1494–1495
ContactsDataCopy.accdb database, 305
ContactsSQL.mdf file, 1456, 1492
ContactTracking.accdb, 204
content
allowing browsers to view blocked, 1245
blocking harmful, 35–36
controls sizing form to fit with, 612–616
disabled in databases downloaded to untrusted locations, 1225
enabling for databases, 916
macros and security, 34–35
contextual tabs. See also specific tabs
adding built-in groups to, 1276–1279
Arrange, 564, 618
creating for custom Ribbon, 1274–1275
Design
editing relationships from, 184
illustrated, 122, 564
query commands on, 488, 509
running reports from, 121
disabling unused, 1283–1284
found on Form Design Tools tab, 567
hidden when Navigation Pane collapsed, 739
Print Preview, 739
report, 761
Report Design Tools, 121–122, 761
Ribbon, 41, 104
setting focus to, 1301–1302
continuation indicator (…), 130
continuous forms
building in Form Wizard, 697–698
example of, 520–521
showing all fields in, 591–593
Continuous Forms view
advantages of, 696
filtering one list with another in, 1095
viewing subform in, 700–701
Control Alignment group
aligning control layouts from, 637–638
snapping items to grid from, 618, 619
control IDs for built-in controls, 1277
Control Layout group, 617, 618
control layout indicator, 599
control layouts
advantages of, 626
converting, 798–800, 801
illustrated, 599
moving controls within, 626–630
removing, 598–599, 632–635, 640–642, 800
selecting all controls in, 639
stacked and tabular, 626, 797
control padding commands, 638–640
Control Padding (Control Layout group), 639
control sources, 566
control-of-flow statements
Call, 1017
Do...Loop, 1017–1018
For...Next, 1018–1019
For Each...Next, 1019–1020
controls
ActiveX Calendar, 726–730
adjusting
Form Wizard, 598–599
layout of form, 616–617
aligning custom form
in Design view, 619–622
in Layout view, 625–626
anchoring in Layout view, 623–624
application’s compatibility with ActiveX, 1068
applying Windows-themed form, 559, 596, 692
arranging in formatted columns, 630–631
associating macro with combo box, 923
avoiding #Error in calculated, 836
bound and unbound, 566
changing content with Change event, 873
command buttons, 517, 535–536, 537
conditional formatting for form, 718
control sources, 566
copying and pasting embedded macros in, 907
counting total events with, 804–807
defined, 526
defining
defaults as AutoFormats, 681
responsive Report view, 749–750
deleting and attaching labels for, 581
dragging to new column, 634–635
editing form inside subform, 709
embedded macros saved with form or report, 904
enabling and locking, 584–585, 662
formatting properties for, 651–661
Date/Time formats, 657–660
displaying Null values, 657
numbers and currency, 652
text, 655–656
Yes/No fields, 660
grouping and moving, 642–643
inserting page numbers in, 806
list and combo boxes, 527–529
loading images into custom Ribbon, 1299–1300
locking button on form, 573
methods for snapping to grid, 618
modifying Report Wizard properties, 787, 788
moving
in Layout view, 118–119
one or more horizontally or vertically, 621
and sizing, 580–581
within control layouts, 626–630
option buttons, check boxes, toggle buttons, and option groups, 526–527
Partially Enclosed vs. Fully Enclosed selection options, 612
placing into control layout, 635–638
programming in Report view, 127–128
property sheets for, 116–117
resizing
in Layout view, 631–632
report’s text box, 797–798
and repositioning Report Wizard, 785–787
using property sheet, 633
Ribbon
attributes for, 1288–1289
list of, 1290–1292
rules for referencing form and report, 920
selecting all
in control layout, 639
in vertical or horizontal area, 588, 600
setting
borders of, 583–584
corner padding, 638–640
defaults for form, 680–683
form tab order, 662–663
label properties for, 585–586
other properties for, 666–669
sizing
to fit form content, 612–616
subform, 704
text box controls for reports, 772–773
smart tags added to, 663–665
snapping to grid, 617–619
tab, 719–723
about, 530
property settings for, 723
setting Page Index property, 721
types of, 719
working with, 720–722
toggle buttons, check boxes, and option buttons, 605–607
validation rules for, 670
Controls group
border formatting with, 583–584
buttons on
list of, 568–572
Special Effect, 645–646
illustrated, 568–572, 761
Controls group, continued
  Option Button command, 714
  placing bound controls from form field list, 573–574
conversion functions, A86–A87
Convert Form’s Macros To Visual Basic button, 938–939
converting
  Access from previous release, 1358–1360
data types, 226–230
  action query data conversion errors, 512
conversion effects on field contents, 226
  dBASE-to-Access conversions, 264
dealing with conversion errors, 231–232
Hyperlink, 229–230
limitations on data type conversions, 226–229
Paradox-to-Access conversions, 266
SQL-to-Access conversions, 270
Visual FoxPro-to-Access conversions, 270
macros to Visual Basic, 938–940
queries
  fields discarded going from select to action, 490
  select to update, 488
  stacked and tabular control layouts, 798–800, 801
coordinates for report border, 1120
Copy command, 207, 394
copying
  fields, 222–224, 593
  objects with macro action, A115
  and pasting
    in Datasheet view, 394–396
  embedded macros, 907
correlated subqueries, A39, A66, A67
Count function, 437
Count Values command, 804–805
counting
  rows with stored procedures, 1524
total events with controls, 804–807
Create A New Data Source To SQL Server wizard, 256–258
Create Column command (SharePoint), 1176
Create Database permissions, 1452
Create Digital Certificate dialog box, 1337
Create New Data Source wizard, 256
Create New List wizard
  creating and naming custom list, 1203–1204
  specifying name for list, 1199–1200
Create Relationship dialog box, 1487
Create tab, 24, 42–43
Create UNIQUE check box (Properties dialog box), 1472, 1473
CROSS JOIN, A43
cross-browser issues, 1131
crosstab queries, 442–449
  creating, 442–447
  Design view of, 442, 443
displaying multiple value fields in, 444
  filling empty cells with zero values, 446–447
  function of, 442
  GROUP BY clauses in, A44–A45
  partitioning data in, 447–449
  pivoting with PivotTable vs., 444, 469–470
  Query Wizard for creating, 431
  sample results desired from, 442, 443
  sort order for columns in, 445–446
  specifying column headings for, 445–446
  unable to change data in, 468
  viewing design in Datasheet view, 445
Ctrl key
  intercepting Ctrl+F4 combination with AutoKeys macro,
    1315–1316
noncontiguous selections with, 579, 1082
currency
  formatting characters for, 653–654
  formatting properties for, 652
Currency data type
  about, 158, 160
  converting, 228
  displaying Null values for, 657
  property for, 162, 652
currency fields, 373
Current Database category (Access Options dialog box), 88–89
custom form controls
  aligning in Design view, 619–622
  aligning in Layout view, 625–626
custom forms. See customizing, forms
custom groups. See also groups
custom groups
  creating object shortcuts in, 63–67
dragging and dropping objects into, 66
  hiding, 67–69
  modifying in custom categories, 59–63
  renaming, 59, 60
  working with, 53–55
Custom Properties dialog box, 729
custom query by form, 1086–1093
Customer Experience Improvement Program, 19, 20
Customize AutoFormat dialog box, 681
Customize category (Access Options dialog box), 28–29, 94
Customize install option
  first-time installations with, 1343–1345
  upgrading with, 1348
customizing. See also custom groups
categories for Navigation Pane, 53–55
forms, 609–683
  adding fields, 610–611
  adjusting control layout, 616–617
  colors and special effects for, 645–646
  completing form design, 640–642
  control anchoring, 623–624
  control padding, 638–640
  creating blank form, 609
  defining tab order, 662–663
  dragging and dropping field in Layout view, 623–624
  enabling and locking controls, 584–585, 662
  fonts, 648–650
  formatting column of controls, 630–631
  formatting properties, 651–661
  Layout view’s advantages for, 623, 642
  lines and rectangles, 642–645
  lining up controls, 619–622, 625–626
  moving controls within control layout, 626–630
  placing controls into control layout, 635–638
  properties controlling appearance, 670–680
  removing control layout, 632–635, 640–642
  scroll bar, 661
  setting control validation rules, 670
  setting form and control defaults, 680–683
  sizing controls to fit content, 612–616
  sizing window to fit form, 622
  snapping controls to grid, 617–619
  property sheets, 116–117
  query properties, 452–463
  Quick Access Toolbar, 28–29
  Ribbon, 1266–1279
    adding built-in groups to tabs, 1276–1279
    building well-formed XML for, 1270–1271
    creating U/SysRibbon table, 1266–1269
    creating VBA callbacks, 1296–1297
    customizing tabs, 1274–1275
    disabling unused tabs, buttons, and groups, 1283–1284
    displaying errors, 1274
    dynamically updating elements, 1297–1299
    explanation of XML code listing, 1294–1296
    hiding existing elements, 1271–1272
    hiding options on Microsoft Office Button, 1300–1301
    loading images into custom controls, 1299–1300
    loading into Access data projects, 1286
    loading XML for, 1284–1287
    setting focus to tab, 1301–1302
    testing, 1270, 1272–1273
    using RibbonX attributes, 1287–1296
  XML code listing for, 1292–1294
  Cut command, 210, 394–395
  cutting
    changing row sequence by sorting or, 396
    and moving data, 210, 394–395
  Cycle property, 726, 1080

D
  DAO. See Data Access Objects (DAO)
  DAP (data access page) support, 14, 100
  data. See also collecting data via e-mail; data selection; validating data
    attachment controls for storing complex, 530–533
    changing
      attributes of, 225–233
      and deleting form, 550–551
      editing in SharePoint lists, 1168–1172
      maximum length of, 230–231
    conversion errors in, 231–232
    creating book’s sample, 1030–1044
    defined, A10
    deleting inactive, 510–511
    duplicate name checking for, 1071–1073
    effect of Format and Decimal Places properties on underlying table, 654
    entering in first table, 149–151
    event properties for changing, 871–873
    events when editing form, 884
    exporting, A79–A83
      to another Access database, A79–A80
      to ODBC database, A82–A83
      to SharePoint Services, 1182–1186
      to spreadsheet or dBASE or Paradox file, A80
      to text file, A81
      to Word mail merge document, A81–A82
    fetching
      for client/server applications, 1321
      on dynamic Web pages with ASP, 1158
      recordsets, 1548
    field independence of, A24–A26
    filtering
      in PivotTables, 470
      in Report view, 747–748
      result of search, 405–412
      table, 178
    fixing errors in imported spreadsheet, 280–282
    formatting properties for, 652–661
    identifying for new database, A5
    input masks for
      defining, 170–174
      limitations of, 174
    storing input mask formatting characters, 173
    inserting from another table, 502–507
    interacting with report, 745–750
data, continued
keyboard shortcuts for datasheet entry, 391
macro actions printing, A105–A106
manipulating in RDBMS, 9–11
modifying in forms, 119–120
moving to database software, 15–17
normalizing for joined tables, 414
organizing before constructing applications, A5
partitioning, 447–449
recordset, 686
replacing in Datasheet view, 394
searching for
and filtering, 405–412
macro actions, A111
selecting
and changing in Datasheet view, 393
layout choices in Form Wizard, 697
to perform tasks, A11
query data from single table, 349–351
sharing
and controlling in Access, 12–13
with SharePoint Services, 1161–1163
simplifying input, 601–607
toggle buttons, check boxes, and option buttons, 605–607
using combo and list boxes, 601–605
smart tag use incompatible with, 664
sorting in Datasheet view, 401–405
specifying for collection via e-mail, 309–310, 330–331
types of invalid, 928–929
validating with macros, 928–934
viewing queries in various ways, 10–11
Data Access Objects (DAO), 981–985
collections in, 983, 984
commonalities between ADODB and ADOX models
and, 987
DBEngine object, 979, 982–984
FindFirst method for locating rows in form recordset, 1104
manipulating complex data types, 997–1000
status of technology, 981–982
working with DAO recordsets, 994–997
data access page (DAP) support, 14, 100
data analysis, A13–A16
choosing database subjects, A13–A16
mapping subjects to database, A16
data collection messages
customizing, 318–319, 334–335
data conversion error, 232
generating field error, 168
managing and resending data collection, 343–345
moving to Outlook Inbox, 325
previewing in Outlook, 321–322
security warnings, 24, 25
sending, 336–337, 340–341
warnings
for field definition deletions, 225
for reserved words or function names, 159
writing for InfoPath forms, 334–335
data control
data sharing and, 12–13
defined, 6
data definition
Access, 6–9
defined, 5
data definition queries, 463
data documents (.xml)
about, 1237
embedding schema and presentation information in,
1237
element of, 1238–1239
data entry
automating, 1053–1071
filling in related data, 1053–1057
fixing e-mail hyperlink, 1061–1062
handling NotInList event, 1058–1061
providing graphical calendar, 1063–1068
working with linked photos, 1069–1071
designing forms for, 518
matching closest entry when typing, 605
Data Entry mode, 543–544, 545
data integrity
ensuring business rules in queries for, 417–419
maintaining application’s, 413
presetting field values to ensure, 935–938
Data Link Properties dialog box, 1454–1457
attaching database files to server, 1455
selecting file as database name, 1456
specifying connections, 1454
using Windows NT Integrated Security, 1454, 1455
data manipulation
Access and, 9–11
defined, 5
data selection
automating in Visual Basic, 1082–1097
filtering one list with another, 1095–1097
multiple-selection list boxes, 1082–1086
providing custom query by form, 1086–1093
selecting from summary list, 1094–1095
criteria for selection
avoiding keywords as, 356
Boolean operators as, 356
building date/time, 356–357
common mistakes using compound, 359
entering for queries, 355–356
filtering, 407–408
noncontiguous
deselecting fields, 579
holding down Ctrl key for, 579, 1082
selecting multiple noncontiguous files in list box, 1082–1086
providing custom query by form, 1086–1093
selecting
all controls in control layout, 639
all controls in vertical or horizontal area, 588, 600
data to perform tasks, A11
multiple fields, 579
working with multiple-selection list boxes, 1082–1086
data sources
creating, 255–259
importing into new SharePoint table, 1187–1188
linking SharePoint list to Access, 1191–1195
read permission for secured, 273
record sources
binding to table, 609–610
building multiple-table query to serve as, 686–688
choosing query used as report’s, 1572
creating query on form property’s, 576–578
defined, 566
in-line functions as report, 1513
selecting report’s, 791–792
specifying, 566–567
subquery providing search criteria from underlying, 1093
using field in calculations from specified report, 834
selecting for importing to Access, 267–268
unable to connect to database with multiple, 302
Windows SharePoint Services site as database, 1207
Data tab (Export XML dialog box), 1247–1248, 1251
Data tab (property sheet), 575
Data Type list box, 109
data types. See also specific data types
assigning for query parameters, 451
chart of Access and SQL parameter, A53
converting, 226–230
action query data conversion errors, 512
conversion effects on field contents, 226
dBASE-to-Access conversions, 264
dealing with conversion errors, 231–232
Hyperlink, 229–230
limitations on data type conversions, 226–229
Paradox-to-Access conversions, 266
SQL-to-Access conversions, 270
Visual FoxPro-to-Access conversions, 270
determining spreadsheet, 274–275
disadvantages of Lookup Wizard, 245
field, 157–161
formatting characters for Text, 655–656
formatting Yes/No, 660
grouping specifications and, 765
limitations on conversions, 226–229
manipulating complex DAO, 997–1000
naming Visual Basic variables with prefix of, 966
selecting SQL Server, 1459
SQL Server column, 1461–1464
sql_variant, 1465
supported in Visual Basic, 961–963
unable to change for fields joining tables, 204
unavailable for e-mail data collection, 311
unavailable in Group, Sort, And Total pane, 763
user-defined, 1465
viewing database’s valid, 108–109
database design concepts, A16–A28
about, A16–A17
developing efficient relationships, A27–A28
creating linking tables, A28
foreign keys, A27
one-to-many and one-to-one relationships, A28
normalization, A19–A27
field independence, A24–A26
field uniqueness, A19–A20
four rules of table design, A27
functional dependence, A21–A23
unique identifier or primary key, A20–A21
waste in single table design, A17–A19
when to break design rules, A28–A31
capturing point-in-time data, A29–A31
creating report snapshot data, A31
improving performance of critical tasks, A29
database diagrams, 1485–1488
Database Documenter, 199–200
database management systems (DBMS), 1159, 1160
database objects, 49, 50
Database Splitter wizard, 1320–1323
database subjects
choosing, A13–A16
mapping to database, A16
Database Tools tab, 24, 44–45
Database window. See Navigation Pane
databases, 102–132. See also database design concepts;
tables
AutoCorrect options for, 193
backing up tables or full, 205–207
capabilities of RDBMS, 5–6
checking version of, 1327
compacting, 250–251
created in Datasheet view, 148–149
creating
data source as link to ODBC, 255–259
empty, 147–149
tables for, 151–156
databases, continued

customizing Quick Access Toolbar commands for, 28–29
data modifications in Form view, 119–120
data vs. information in designing, A10
DBEngine object in, 979, 982–984
defined, 4, 99
defining
fields, 156–157
form in Design view, 114–117
delivering dynamic query results on Web page, 1158–1160
displaying list of tables, 105–106
distributing execute-only, 1329–1330
enabling untrusted, 35–36
encrypting with password, 1334–1336
entering data in first tables, 149–151
establishing variable pointing to current, 989
exit code for Contacts.accdb, 1312–1315
exporting data
to another Access, A79–A80
to ODBC, A82–A83
as static HTML file, 1140–1143
formats compatible with Access, 9
four-digit year format for individual or all, 192, 1489
guidelines for enabling content, 916
importing
Access object from other Access, 271–273
and linking data to, 253
source data into new tables in, 276
improved reliability of Visual Basic project, 950
limitations of, 201
linking
data to, 253
dBASE and Paradox files to Access, 298–299
tables with other Access, 295–298
listing queries by object type, 110–111
loading reference to Access Database Engine Object Library in, 981
macros
defining multiple actions for, 129–130, 895–897
working with in, 128–130
migrating to SharePoint
about, 1207–1208
opening database from SharePoint, 1223–1226
publishing vs., 1207
republishing after changing database, 1207, 1219–1222
steps to move database, 1212–1219
ways SharePoint handles migrated data, 1218–1219
working online with migrated data, 1217
modules in, 130–132
opening, 102–103
existing, 22–25
options for extending Access, 137–138
packaging and signing, 1336–1339
printing table definitions for, 199–200
project
building new SQL Server, 1448–1451
connecting to existing SQL Server, 1452–1457
defining table relationships in database diagrams, 1485–1488
events creating, 1452
naming conventions for SQL Server, 1451
projects vs. databases, 1450
publishing to SharePoint site, 1208–1211
about, 1208
.accdb file format required, 1210
downloading SharePoint databases to trusted locations, 1225
moving vs., 1207
publishing changes to migrated database, 1217
republishing after changing database, 1207, 1219–1222
selecting and publishing file, 1210–1211
randomly loading data to sample, 1030–1032
read-only, 1224
reasons for modifying, 203–204
relational, 4–5
reports
changing definitions of, 121–124
function of for, 120–121
interactive Report view for, 127–128
previewing before printing, 124–125
viewing in Layout view, 125–127
resolving changes in shared, 1231
role of forms in, 114
running
Performance Analyzer on, 1302–1303
queries in Datasheet view, 113–114
saving changes to, 205
selecting
Layout view for forms, 118–119
SQL Server, 1451
setting options in VBE, 198
spreadsheet or text files linked to Access, 300–301
SQL tables linked to Access, 301–302
startup properties for, 1310–1312
synchronizing after offline changes, 1230–1233
templates
customizing default, 195–199
selecting, 143–145
using to create, 142–147
testing in runtime mode, 1329
using Design view with, 107–108
viewing
 module objects in, 942–943
 navigation objects in groups, 105
 wildcard characters for string comparisons, A49
 working offline, 1226–1229
data-driven design, A7
Datasheet category (Access Options dialog box), 90
Datasheet command, 592–593
Datasheet Formatting dialog box, 1146
Datasheet Formatting Dialog Box Launcher button, 1145
Datasheet view
 adding records in, 391
 buttons in, 385
 copying and pasting data in, 394–396
 creating and customizing Windows SharePoint Services, 1173–1175
database created in, 148–149
deleting rows in, 396
expressions viewed in, 363, 368
extra table rows in, 111
forms
detecting filters applied to, 876
setting datasheet format for, 1145
hyperlinks
 editing, 400–401
 working with in, 397–400
keyboard shortcuts in, 386, 391
navigation buttons for records, 386
preventing design changes in applications, 1311
properties for trapped keyboard and mouse events, 876–878
queries
 setting datasheet format for, 1145
 working with, 384–412
record indicators in, 390
replacing data in, 394
reports, detecting filters applied to, 876
selecting and changing data in, 393
SharePoint
 modifying layout in, 1178
 similarity between lists and tables in, 1169
sorting data in, 401–405
subforms
defining subdatasheet, 710–713
 sizing controls in, 704
 using in, 701
viewing, 539, 541
switching to other view
 Design view, 109
 PivotChart view, 479
tables, setting datasheet format for, 1145
viewing
 combo box in, 241–242
crosstab query design in, 445
query field’s properties in, 354
query results run in, 113–114
tables in, 109–110
union queries in, 465
data-tying characters, defining variable’s data type with, 962
date. See also Date/Time data type
 adding print date to reports, 830–832
 checking for overlapping, 1078–1080
date/time field, 1063
defining query parameters relative to current, 495
deleting rows using date query parameter, 507–510
excluding query requests by, 1109
filtering records for append query by, 503–504
formats for, 508
four-digit year values, 191–192, 651, 1489
functions
 Date, 503, 830–831
 DateDiff, 365–368, 373
time and date, 375–376, A87
limiting records with custom range of, 812–813
predefined date filters, 408–410
querying across date spans, 428
using in selection criteria, 356–357
validation rules set by, 670
years supported in SharePoint, 128
Date And Time dialog box, 832
Date function, 503, 830–831
Date Picker, 727
Date/Time data type
  about, 158
  contents of, 160
  converting, 229
  displaying Null values for, 657
  field property for, 162
  Format property settings for, 657–658
  formatting characters for, 658–660
  report grouping options for, 818
  date/time field, 1063
date/time functions, A87
DateDiff function
  building expression with, 366–368
  interval settings for, 365–366
  multiplying integer with currency fields, 373
DatePart function, 365
dBASE files
  exporting Access data to, A80
  importing, 260–264
  linking to Access databases, 293, 298–299
DBEngine object, 979, 982–984
DBMS (database management system), 1159, 1160
Debug toolbar, 951, 952, 956
debugging
  macros, 890
  Visual Basic, 951–960
    call stack, 959–960
    preventing, 1312, 1328
    setting breakpoints, 951–952, 957
    using Immediate window, 952–956
    working with Watch window, 956–959, 960
Decimal Places property, 654
decimals ()
  indicating numbers and currency, 653
  using decimal fields in SharePoint Services, 1219
DECLARE statements, 1531
declaring
  functions, 1006–1007
  parameters
    to filter in-line functions, 1515, 1516
    in parameter queries, A52–A54
  subroutines, 1007–1009
variables and constants
  Const statement, 965
  Dim statement, 966–969
  Enum statement, 969–970
  Event statement, 971–972
  Private statement, 972–973
  public, 963–964
  Public statement, 973–974
  ReDim statement, 974–975
  Static statement, 975–976
  Type statement, 977–978
Default Max Records property, 1550, 1555–1557
Default View property, defining for reports, 746
defaults
  changing for Output All Fields property, 452–453
  creating custom templates for, 195–199
  ensuring unique company and contact, 1077–1078
  overriding field name, 377
  placeholder character, 171
  record locking settings for linked data, 294, 295
  restoring Quick Access Toolbar, 33
  setting form and control, 680–683
  changing with Set Control Defaults button, 680–681
  defining AutoFormatting for control, 681
  defining template form, 682–683
Unique Records property, 456–457
delete queries
  about, 485
  backing up before running, 510
  command on Design contextual tab for, 488
  confirming actions of, 510
  defined, 485
  deleting inactive data with, 510–511
  icon for, 490
  testing rows affected by, 507–510
  using, 510
DELETE statement, A72–A73
deleting. See also delete queries
  check constraints, 1480
  columns, 150
  control labels, 581
  embedded macros, 906–907
  field definitions, 225
  fields, 225
  form data, 550–551
  form properties controlling filtering and modifications, 673–674
  image path for photograph, 1070–1071
  inactive data, 510–511
  lists in SharePoint, 1198
  message box confirming, 396
  objects with macro action, A115
  records
    in InfoPath form, 340
    testing code for related records when, 1074–1075
  relationships between tables, 210
  rows
    in ADO keyset, 1004
    by date, 451, 507–510
    in datasheets, 396
  tables, 209–210
  temporary variables, 909–910
  watched items, 960
delimited text files
about, 282
setting up data for, 283–284
tab field delimiter for, 288
dependencies
AutoCorrect options for names of, 192–193
checking object, 207–209
Descending button, 402, 409
descending sort order, 378
Description property for fields, 156
deselecting noncontiguous fields, 579
Design contextual tab
editing relationships from, 184
illustrated, 122, 564
Query Type group on, 488, 509
running reports from, 121
design grid of Query window
dragging and dropping fields into, 352
illustrated, 349
design strategies for applications, A7–A13
analyzing tasks, A7–A10
organizing tasks, A11–A13
selecting data to perform tasks, A11
types of, A7
Design tab
Form Design Tools
Controls group buttons, 568–572, 583–584, 645–646
Font group buttons, 582–583, 761
Design view
aligning and sizing controls, 609–622
adjusting layout of form controls, 616–617, 626–627
aligning form labels, 619–621
Layout view vs., 623, 642
lining up controls, 619–622
sizing controls to fit content, 612–616, 631
snapping controls to grid, 617–619
bigint data type unsupported in, 1461
event properties unavailable for, 871, 873, 875, 876, 878
field properties on General tab of, 161–165
forms
designing structure of, 114–117
polishing subform design, 698–700
preventing users from opening in, 671
moving between parts of window, 222
opening and closing property sheet in, 576
project tables
creating in, 1457–1459
defining relationships for, 1482–1485
wizards for .accdb applications unavailable, 1457
queries opened in, 112–113, 349, 351
reports
changing report definition in, 121–124
contextual tabs for, 121–122
opening subreport, 742
using Layout vs. Design view, 125–127
viewing page number controls in, 806
showing all columns for SharePoint lists, 1206
switching view
to Datasheet, 109
to PivotChart, 479
tables
creating in, 155–156
defining validation rules for, 176
modifying query table design, 501–502
reviewing in, 107–108
designing. See also advanced form design; advanced report design
application prototype, A5
database applications, A3–A31
charting task flow, A4
constructing application, A5
data analysis, A13–A16
database design concepts, A16–A28
designing prototype and user interface, A5
identifying data elements, A5
identifying tasks, A4
organizing data, A5
overview, A3–A4, A6
process-driven and data-driven design, A7
rationale of order-entry examples in, A8
strategies for, A7–A13
testing, reviewing, and refining, A6
understanding work process, A4
when to break design rules, A28–A31
reviewing input form in Form view, 589
subreports, 855–857
switchboard forms, 1306–1310
tables, 142
integrity checks in table design, 413
normalizing data, 414
PivotTables, 473–478
setting design options in Access Options dialog box, 191–195
storing calculated value in table, 1114
using query designer, 415
desktop databases. See .accdb files; applications; databases
desktop shortcuts to Access application, 1331–1334
Detail Fields drop zone, 474
Detail section
form
about, 518–519
grid dots in, 564–565
selecting width and height, 566
Detail section, continued

report
embedding PivotChart in, 861–863
expression values used with conditional formatting, 849
illustrated, 740
numbering lines in, 846–848
performing calculations on, 834–837
Details view (Navigation Pane), 77
diagram pane (query designer)
adding columns to, 1499–1450
working in, 1497, 1499, 1500–1503
Diagram window
adding table to, 1485–1486
defining relationship between tables in, 1487–1488
saving diagram, 1488
viewing project table relationships in, 1486
Dialog Box Launcher button (Office Clipboard task pane), 395
dialog boxes. See confirmation dialog boxes; and specific Access dialog boxes
digital certificates
packaging signed database with, 1337
purchasing, 1336
self-signing, 1337
digital signatures
about digitally signed files, 1336
omitted from sample databases, 35
responding to security notice about, 1338–1339
signing .accdb files, 1338
Dim statement, 966–969
disabling
Layout view, 1304
Message Bar, 38
Microsoft Office Genuine Advantage confirmation dialog box, 145
Minimize or Maximize button, 675
Module and Class Module button, 1330
single stepping through macros, 895
special keys, 1312
unused Ribbon tabs, buttons, and groups, 1283–1284
Windows Vista's User Account Control, 197
warning smart tags, 771
Discard My Changes button, 1232
discarding e-mail replies, 314
display labels for PivotCharts, 482–483
displaying
all table fields in field list, 563–564
Caption property, 586, 587
complex information in embedded subforms, 1577
custom Ribbon errors, 1274
document tabs, 85–86
file name extensions, 102
form properties, 586–587
function queries, 1525
HTML behind Web page, 1128
list of database tables, 105–106
list of queries by object type, 110–111
long lines of code, 925
Macro Name and Condition columns in Macro window, 891, 922
messages or beeping, A115
multiple-value fields in crosstab queries, 444
Navigation Pane
custom group names, 62–63
single category, 81
system objects and system tables, 1267
Null values, 657
object shortcuts, 72–75
ScreenTips, 104
SQL pane of query designer, 1498
subdatasheet properties, 388
text in color specified, 654, 656
USysRibbons table, 1266–1267
values in option group, 714–716
Visual Basic Editor modules, 131–132
DISTINCTROW clauses, A34, A58–A59, A65
distributing applications, 1319–1340
creating application shortcut, 1331–1334
encrypting database with password, 1334–1336
execute-only databases, 1329–1330
packaging and signing database, 1336–1339
understanding runtime mode execution, 1328–1329
using linked tables, 1320–1328
splitting tables with Database Splitter wizard, 1320–1323
verifying and correcting linked table connections, 1323–1328
DLookup function, 930–931
Do...Loop statement, 1017–1018
Dockable property, 946
Docking tab (Options dialog box), 950
DoCmd object
about, 979, 980, 1026–1027
executing commands with, 1005
executing macro actions with, 890
document libraries, 1214
Document Lists of Control IDs, 1270–1271
Document Management Server, 1209
Document Window Options section (Access Options dialog box), 84–85, 89
Documenter dialog box, 199–200
documents
displaying or hiding tabs for, 85–86
errors adding Quick Access Toolbar macros for all, 30 exporting data to Word mail merge, A81–A82 options for overlapping or tabbed views, 109 presentation
about, 1237, 1241–1243 Report ML version of, 1250, 1252 presentation layout extension, 1237, 1243 schema, 1237, 1239–1241 static HTML, 1140–1158 customizing appearance of Datasheet view for, 1143–1148 designing and using HTML templates, 1148–1151 exporting database as HTML file, 1140–1143 user interface for single or multiple, 83–86 .xml data about, 1237 embedding schema and presentation information in, 1237 example of, 1238–1239 dollar sign ($), 653, 655 domain functions in Access, 1057 DoReport macro, 914–915 DoReport macro group, 898 double arrow mouse pointer, 580, 581 double hyphens (–), 1528 double left arrow (<<) button, 593 double quotation marks (“ ”) added to single text values, 355 embedding text with, 653, 655 placing delimited object names in, 1460 string constants with, 362 double right arrow (>>) button, 593 downloading Access 2007 Developer Extensions and Runtime, 1340 databases to trusted location, 1225 online templates, 145–147 SharePoint database in Internet Explorer, 1224 SQL Server 2005 Express Edition, 133, 1350, 1494 SQL Server Books Online, 1460, 1533 Visual Basic 2005 Express Edition, 1261 Visual FoxPro ODBC driver, 269 Drag-And-Drop Text Editing check box (Options dialog box), 948 dragging and dropping controls to new column in Layout view, 634–635 fields into Query window, 352 to simple input form, 578–580 objects into custom groups, 66 drawing border on report, 1118–1121 straight lines while holding down Shift key, 643 drivers required to import Visual FoxPro data, 269 drop zones for PivotTable design window, 475, 476 duplicates AutoNumber and potential for, 549 checking keyboard shortcuts for, 1305–1306 report text boxes and fields for names, 836 Visual Basic names for, 1071–1073 eliminating duplicate lookup values, 238 ignoring duplicate key for unique indexes, 1474 primary keys, 512 dynamic fields unsupported in SharePoint Services, 1219 dynamic Web pages delivering dynamic query results, 1158–1160 processing live data with HTML forms, 1160 using ASP for fetching data on, 1158 dynaset recordsets, 996 E E+/e+, 654 E–/e–, 654 Edit Datasheet View page (SharePoint), 1178 Edit Hyperlink dialog box, 399 Edit mode for forms, 541 Edit Relationships dialog box check boxes in, 184, 185 creating relationship on multiple fields, 186–187 Edit Switchboard Item dialog box, 1308, 1309 Edit Switchboard Page dialog box, 1308, 1309 editing data in SharePoint lists, 1168–1172 embedded macros, 902–904 fields on one side of inner join, 419 form properties controlling filtering and modifications, 673–674 forms data on, 517, 550–551, 884 in Form view, 119–120 inside subform control, 709 sequence of events in, 882–885 HTML, 1134–1135 hyperlinks, 400–401, 547–548 image control contents, 534 queries in Datasheet view, 393 in SQL view, 463–468 relationships from Design contextual tab, 184 tables in SQL Server, 134–135 XML UsysRibbon table, 1269 Editor Format tab (Options dialog box), 949 Editor tab (Options dialog box), 948–949
elements
  defined, 1131
dynamically updating Ribbon, 1297–1299
hiding existing Ribbon, 1271–1272
identifying data, A5
e-mail. See also collecting data via e-mail; processing e-mail replies
  compatible software for, 1341
  fixing hyperlink, 1061–1062
  moving HTTP-based messages to Outlook Inbox, 325
  processing replies automatically, 312–313, 325–326
  sending data collection messages, 336–337, 340–341
embedded macros, 901–907
  copying and pasting, 907
  creating, 904–906
  deleting, 906–907
  editing, 902–904
  incompatible with .mdb databases, 907
  listed on property sheet, 902
  removed when converting to Visual Basic, 939
  saved with form or report control, 904
embedded PivotCharts
  in form, 730, 733–734
  in report, 861–863
embedded spaces in names, 159, 216
embedded subforms, 523, 692–713
  creating, 703–706
  defining subdatasheet subform, 710–713
  designing innermost first, 696–701
  displaying complex information with, 1577
  editing controls in inner forms, 709
  main form
    creating, 707–710
    designating as source, 706–707
    setting up first-level subform, 701–702
    sizing controls in Form view, 704
    specifying query data source for, 693–696
    uses for, 692–693
embedded subreports
  creating and embedding, 741–744, 851–859
  using in Access projects, 1577
embedded text, 653
Enable Layout View For This Database check box (Access Options dialog box), 671
Enabled property for controls, 584–585, 662
enabling
  Choose Builder dialog box, 906
  content
    by defining trusted locations, 39–40
    for databases, 916
  controls, 584–585, 662
  Layout view for database, 671
Message Bar, 38
  single stepping through macros, 894
Snap To Grid, 617, 618
untrusted database, 35–36
encoding options for exported text, 1248, 1249
encrypting database with password, 1334–1336
End Function statement, 1007
End Sub statement, 1008
Enforce Referential Integrity check box (Edit Relationships dialog box), 184, 185
Enforce Relationship for INSERTs and UPDATEs check box (Properties dialog box), 1483, 1484
Enforce Relationship for Replication check box (Properties dialog box), 1483, 1484
Enter key, 392
Enter Parameter Value dialog box, 451, 508, 1516, 1562, 1564
Enum statement, 969–970
equal joins, 1503, A42
equal sign (=)
  entering expressions after, 763
  equals comparison, 168, 169
  indicating equal joins, A42
equi-join queries. See inner joins
EQV operator
  expressing in query designer, A55
  truth tables for, A56
#Error in calculated controls, 836
error messages
  action query, 513–514
  generating field, 168
  missing switchboard for database, 1307
  providing for overlapping data, 1078–1080
error trapping, 910–915
Access Failed dialog box and, 912–913
clearing MacroError object after, 916, A118
macro, 890
macro actions for
  about, A118
    OnError action, 911, 914, 915, A118
  process using, 913–915
Visual Basic
  code listing, 1045–1050
  On Error statements in, 1028–1030
  setting options for, 949
Error And Usage Report Settings page (Microsoft SQL Server Installation Wizard), 1334, 1335
errors. See also error trapping; troubleshooting
  adding macros for all documents with Quick Access Toolbar, 30
  authenticating SQL Server 2005 Express Edition with Windows Vista, 258

1388 elements
checking logged application, 1315
data conversion, 231–232
displaying custom Ribbon, 1274
event properties for trapping, 882
examining all Visual Basic error codes, 1044–1050
  fixing
    imported spreadsheet, 280–282
    imported text file, 290
generating with misapplied smart tags, 664
  linking data, 301
  opening linked tables, 1327
  troubleshooting action query, 512–514
ErrorTrapExample macro, 910–911
Esc key, 740
Event statement, 971–972
event-driven applications, 867–869. See also events
  about, 869
  building applications from, 868–869
  counting totals for, 804–807
  defining Report view controls responsive to, 749–750
  NotInList, 931, 1058–1061
  opening and synchronizing pop-up form, 1101–1104
  PivotChart form, 730
properties for
  changing data, 871–873
  detecting focus changes, 874–875
  detecting form and report filtering, 876
  detecting PivotTable and PivotChart changes, 870, 878–880
  detecting timer expiration, 882
  names of, 870
  opening and closing forms and reports, 870–871
  printing, 881
  trapping errors, 882
  relationship to other Access objects, 101
  sequence in form editing, 882–885
  triggering task from related, 1105–1109
  validating data with BeforeUpdate and AfterUpdate, 931, 936–937
Windows, 867–868
Events template, 152, 153
Excel. See also spreadsheets
  exporting PivotTable to, 476
  linking spreadsheet data from, 300–301
  PivotTables in, 470
  using first row of spreadsheet as field names, 274
Exchange, 1341
Exchange Server 2000, 1342
exclamation mark (!)
  forcing left alignment, 653, 655
  not trusted macro actions marked with, 918
  preceding object name with, 989–990
  separating table and field names with, 372, 373
exclusive mode for database, 1334–1335
execute-only applications
  distributing databases as, 1329–1330
  preventing users switching to Design view for, 671
  property settings for, 1310–1312
  runtime mode and, 1328–1329
executing
  Access commands, 1027–1028
  macro actions, 1026–1027
  queries with macro actions, A106–A107
  Stop statement suspending execution, 1024
  Visual Basic commands in Immediate window, 952–953
EXISTS predicate, A38–A39
exit code for Contacts.accdb database, 1312–1315
Exit Function statement, 1007
Exit Sub statement, 1008
Expand Field button, 476
expanding
  fields, 476
  Navigation Pane, 47
  subdatasheets, 387–390, 461
Export - HTML Document dialog box
  check boxes in, 1142
  exporting reports with formatting, 1152–1153, 1154
  preserving data formatting, 1146–1147
Export - SharePoint Site wizard, 1183–1186
Export - XML File wizard, 1246
Export Data To Microsoft Access dialog box, 341, 342
Export To Excel button, 476
Export XML dialog box
  basic options, 1247
  expanded options of, 1247
  tabs and features of, 1247–1250
exporting
  automating XML export in Visual Basic, 1256–1260
  data, A79–A83
    to another Access database, A79–A80
    to ODBC database, A82–A83
    to SharePoint Services, 1182–1186
    to spreadsheet or dBASE or Paradox file, A80
    to text file, A81
    to Word mail merge document, A81–A82
database as static HTML file, 1140–1143
  formatted datasheets, 1146–1148
  objects with macro action, A116, A117
  report with template, 1152–1154
XML from Access, 1245–1254
  as Active Server Page, 1249, 1250
  forms and reports, 1250–1254
  tables and queries, 1246–1250
ExportXML command, 1256
Expression Builder, 371–376
adding functions to, 372
illustrated, 371
name separators inserted by, 373
opening from Group, Sort, And Total pane, 763
usefulness of, 375
Expression clause, A39–A41
Expression Web, 1128, 1135, 1139, 1159
expressions, 362–370. See also Expression Builder
arithmetic, 364–370
calculating totals on, 838
concatenating Null values in, 364, 420
conditional
macros use of, 900–901
using DLookup and IsNull functions in macros,
930–931
constraint
adding, 1478–1479
eamples of, 1481–1482
multiple, 1481
defining
as report groups, 761, 763
in totals queries, 439
effect of report groupings on, 818
entering in Zoom window, 362–363
field names in, 362
filtering append query by date/time, 503–504
fully qualifying field names in, 372
including in update queries, 489
parentheses in, 370
quantified predicates with, A54–A55
referencing table fields in update query, 492
text, 362–364
using Expression Builder for, 371–376
viewing in Datasheet view, 363, 368
Extensible Markup Language. See XML (Extensible
Markup Language)
External Data tab
about, 24, 43–44
illustrated, 43, 261
import and export commands on, 261, 1183
SharePoint List button on, 1183, 1184
Extract Database To dialog box, 1339

F
Feature Selection page (Microsoft SQL Server Installation
Wizard), 1352, 1353
Featured Online Templates (Getting Started screen), 21,
22
feedback on application design, A6
field independence, A24–A26

field list
displaying all table fields in, 563–564
dragging fields to form design grid from, 578–579
illustrated, 564
placing bound controls on form from, 573–574
replacing with property sheet, 565
selecting all fields in, 578
unlocking, 122
Field List button, 476
field names
AutoCorrect options for, 192–193
brackets around, 362
changing, 212–217
characters for separating table and, 372, 373
duplicate, 836
fully qualifying, 372
including spaces in XML, 1263
long names truncated when exported to dBASE or
Paradox, A80
omitting spaces in, 159, 216
renaming in queries, 419
requirements in expressions, 362
separating names of SQL tables and, 373
specifying in Import Text Wizard, 289
using in simple queries, 377–378
valid characters for, 159
fields. See also field names; selection criteria
Access project columns vs., 1458
adding to custom form, 610–611
adding to table template, 1261–1264
adjusting width of in Layout view, 802, 804
attributes stored in, 5
bug causing incorrect positioning on form grid, 627
captions
changing PivotTable, 477
as column header for data exported to spreadsheet,
A80
changing, maximum length of data, 230–231
concatenating with & character, 362
conditional formatting for form, 716–719
converting spreadsheet Zip, 275
copying, 222–224
creating relationship on multiple, 186–187
data types
conversions affecting contents of, 226
listing of, 157–161
unavailable for data collection, 311
defined, 4
defining, 156–157, 166–167
order of table, 178
deleting, 225
design concept of, A17
displaying Null value in text, 657
dragging and dropping
into Query window, 352
in simple input form, 578–580
editing on one side of join, 419
entering selection criteria for, 355–356
formatting Rich Text form, 324
generating error messages for, 168
inserting, 220–222
hyperlinks in, 398–400
keyboard shortcuts for, 542–543
linking tables with field definitions, 181–183
list of PivotTable, 474
modifying
data selected in, 392
sequence of in table, 219–220
in table template, 1264–1265
moving, 217–220
Multi-Value Lookup, 245–248
Null, 166
outputting all in query, 452–453
positioning in Layout view, 802
presetting values to ensure data integrity, 935–938
properties
for captions, 377
changing, 232–233
defining Lookup properties, 353
linking with subform control, 705
Lookup tab, 242
setting, 161–165
setting Description, 156
setting query, 353–355
viewing, 107–108
viewing for bound combo box, 604–605
viewing in Datasheet view, 354
query updating multiple, 491–493
referencing update query expressions, 492
renaming template, 154
report groupings effect on, 818
Rich Text Format support for SharePoint text,
1170–1171
selecting
all in field list, 578
all table, 352, 353
in Form Wizard, 593–594
multiple, 579
as report group, 762–763
Report Wizard, 778
as source for stored e-mail address, 315–316
SharePoint Services, 1218, 1219
sorting query recordsets by, 378–380, 421
status set with toggle buttons, check boxes, and option
buttons, 605–607
unable to set default in date/time, 1063
uniqueness of, A19–A20
update limitations in queries, 468–469
uses of, 99
using in report calculations, 834
U/ SysRibbons table, 1266
validation rules for, 165, 168–170, 381–382
viewing form’s, 115–116
File Location tab (Microsoft Office dialog box), 1345,
1348
File New Database dialog box
building new SQL Server database from, 1448, 1449
opening, 144
selecting folder to save database, 146
using existing SQL Server database, 1452–1453
File Open dialog box, 262
file system functions, A90–A91
File Transport Protocol (FTP), 1138
files
.accdb
about, 6
backing up, 205–207
compiling, 272
components of applications, 978
DAO model with desktop applications, 981
databases vs. projects, 1450
packaging and signing, 1338
publishing or moving to SharePoint Services, 1210,
1212
return DAO recordset for Recordset property, 1104
user-level security unsupported for, 12
.accde, 1330
.accdr, 1329
Access, 6
.accfl, 153
.adp
about, 132–133, 1448
application engine used by, 978–979
cautions viewing project recordsets for action queries,
1523
cautions viewing project recordsets for action queries,
1523
connecting to new SQL Server database, 1448–1451
creating, 1448–1457
installing SQL Server 2005 Express Edition to build,
1349
projects vs. databases, 1450
using with SQL Server, 6
views, functions, and stored procedures in, 135–137
changing to test runtime mode, 1329
dBASE
exporting Access data to, A80
importing, 260–264
linking to Access databases, 293, 298–299
files, continued

delimited text, 282, 283–284, 288
digitally signed, 1336
displaying file name extensions, 102
file system functions, A90–A91
HTML, 1147–1148
importing
  Paradox, 265–266
  XML, 1234–1260
inserting in attachment fields, 546
linking, 292
 .mdb
  about, 6
  Access architecture and compatibility with, 979
  compatibility with temporary variables, 910
  creating compiled version of, 272
  embedded macros incompatible with, 907
  user-level security support for, 12
 .mdf, 1455–1456
 .msi, 1340
Paradox
  exporting Access data to, A80
  importing, 265–266
  linking to Access databases, 293, 298–299
sample
  location of, 23, 103
  modifying table design for, 204
  working with project files, 1494–1495
selecting multiple noncontiguous, 1082–1086
text, 282–291
  automating import specification of fixed-width, 291
  data setup for fixed-width, 284–285
  delimited or fixed-width, 282
  exporting data to, A81
  fixing errors in imported, 290
  importing, 285–290
  linking to Access databases, 300–301
  preparing to import, 282
  setting up delimited data, 283–284
XML, 1237–1245
  about, 1237
  .htm, 1243–1245
  .xml, 1237, 1238–1239
  .xsd, 1237, 1239–1241, 1255
  .xsl, 1241–1243
  .xss, 1243
fill characters embedded in format string, 653
Fill/Back Color button, 587, 588
filling
  empty recordset cells with zero values, 446–447
  placeholder characters, 655–656

filling out
  application design worksheet, A9, A10, A12
  HTML forms, 322–325
  InfoPath forms, 337–341
Filter button, 385, 402
Filter By Form feature
  illustrated, 555
  searching for states with, 410–411
  using custom Query By Form vs., 1086
Filter Fields drop zone, 474
filter icons, 408
Filter Selection button, 385
Filter window, 408–410
filtering. See also server filters
  append query records by date/time, 503–504
  building query on query, 421–424
  data in Report view, 747–748
  database object lists, 49, 50, 52–53
  Filter By Form feature, 410–411
  form field data, 551, 554–556
  form objects, 114, 115
  form properties controlling, 673–674
  in-line functions, 1515, 1516
  limiting returned records for, 410
  linking
    forms and subforms with, 1098–1099
    to report using, 1099–1101
    modules, 130–131
  objects with Search Bar, 79–80
  one list with another, 1095–1097
  PivotTable data, 470
  report on opening based on parameters, 1121–1124
  saving and reusing filters, 412
  selections, 407–408
  stored procedures, 1493
  table data, 178
Find And Replace dialog box
  form searches with, 552–553
  searching data with, 405–406
Find button, 385
Find method, 1104
Find Unmatched Query Wizard, 432–434
FindFirst method, 1104
finding. See searching
finishing touches for applications, 1283–1317
controlling starting and running, 1310–1316
  setting database startup properties, 1310–1312
starting and stopping application, 1312–1315
customizing Ribbons, 1283–1302
  disabling unused tabs, buttons, and groups, 1283–1284
  dynamically updating elements, 1297–1299
hiding options on Microsoft Office Button, 1300–1301
loading images into custom controls, 1299–1300
loading XML for, 1284–1287
setting focus to tab, 1301–1302
using RibbonX attributes, 1287–1296
XML code listing for, 1292–1294
disabling Layout view, 1304
fine-tuning with Performance Analyzer, 1302–1303
performing final Visual Basic compile, 1316–1317
switchboard forms for, 1305–1310
checking for duplicate keyboard shortcuts, 1305–1306
designing in Switchboard Manager, 1306–1310
illustrated, 1305
First function, 437
fixed-width text files
about, 282
automating import specification of, 291
setting up data lor, 284–285
flow control
designing application task flow, A4
forms for, 517–518
macro actions for, A107–A108
statements
Call, 1017
Do...Loop, 1017–1018
For...Next, 1018–1019
For Each...Next, 1019–1020
GoTo, 1020–1021
If...Then...Else, 1021–1022
RaiseEvent, 1022–1023
Select Case, 1023–1024
Stop, 1024
text stored procedures, 1531–1535
Visual Basic, 1016–1026
While...Wend, 1025
With...End, 1025–1026
focus
controlling with macro actions, A113–A114
events detecting changes in, 874–875
setting to contextual tabs, 1301–1302
folders
Access Data Collection Replies, 331
designating as trusted location, 37–38
save new database to selected, 146
saving template files in appropriate, 197–199
Font group
buttons of, 582–583
illustrated, 582, 761
Font Name combo box, 648
fonts
aligning, 583
changing size for Query window, 467
creating shadowed effect behind label, 650
customizing form, 648–650
Font group buttons on Design tab, 582–583
guidelines for using, 650
meanings of font name icons, 649
printer, screen, and TrueType, 649
setting default datasheet options for Web, 1144–1145
footers
form, 518–519
report, 740–741
defining report with or without, 767–768
displaying page numbers in, 832–833
grand total in, 839–840, 843–844
For...Next statement, 1018–1019
For Each...Next statement, 1019–1020
foreign keys
defined, 415
efficiency and, A27
relationships between primary and, 416
updating values in child tables, 185
form controls
locking button on, 573
tab order for, 662–663
form design. See advanced form design
Form Design Tools tab
Controls group buttons on, 568–572, 583–584,
645–646
Font group buttons on, 582–583
form grid
horizontal ruler unavailable for, 633
incorrect field positioning on, 627
removing or setting dot color in, 564–565
snapping controls to, 617–619
units of measure in, 566
form modules
breakpoints ineffective if not open in Visual Basic
Editor, 957
module objects vs., 944
form properties
border styles, 675–676
controlling filtering and modifications, 673–674
defining pop-up or modal, 672–673
displaying, 586–587
listed on All tab, 676–680
preventing user’s access to window controls, 675
restricting views for users, 670–671
rules for referencing, 919–920
setting navigation options, 671–672
Form view
Auto Resize unavailable in, 622
buttons in, 120
detecting filters applied to forms, 876
Form view, continued
retrieving input form in, 589
sizing subform controls in, 704
trapped keyboard and mouse events properties in, 876–878
viewing and editing data in Form window, 119–120

Form window
in Design view, 114–121
in Form view, 119–120
in Layout view, 118–119, 563
sizing to fit form automatically, 622

Form Wizard
building single continuous form in, 697–698
creating basic form, 593–597
picking form style, 594–596
selecting fields, 593–594
illustrated, 689
justified formats for forms in, 597
missing background images in, 595, 690
modifying basic form, 598–601
opening and using, 688–689
quick create command forms vs., 593
working with template as custom style, 692

Format function, 436

Format property
effect on underlying table’s data, 654
settings for Date/Time data type, 657–658
settings for Number and Currency data types, 652
Yes/No data type settings, 660

formatting
column of controls, 630–631
conditional
using in forms, 716–719
using in reports, 848–851
exporting datasheet to HTML with, 1146–1148
Rich Text fields, 324

formatting characters
Date/Time, 658–660
Number and Currency, 653–654
Text data type, 655–656

forms, 517–734. See also advanced form design; HTML forms; multiple-page forms
about, 100
ActiveX objects in, 533–535
adding records in, 543–548
adding smart tags to controls, 663–665
advanced design, 685–734
ActiveX Calendar control, 726–730
basing on multiple-table query, 686–691
conditional formatting, 716–719
displaying values in option group, 714–716
embedded subforms, 692–713
multiple-page forms, 520, 723–726
PivotChart forms, 730–734
working with tab control, 719–723
architecture
in Access, 980
conceptual, 560–561
attachment controls, 530–533
automated processes in, 561, 562
border formatting for, 583–584
bound and unbound, 566
building simple input
adding new query for property, 576–578
contextual Ribbon tabs for, 567–572
creating and setting dimensions, 563–567
customizing colors and reviewing design, 587–589
displaying form properties, 586–587
dragging fields to form, 578–580
font options for, 582–583
Form Wizard, 593–597
label properties for, 585–586
locking control button, 573
modifying Form Wizard forms, 598–601
moving and sizing controls, 580–581
placing bound controls from field list, 573–574
quick create commands for, 590–593
setting object properties, 574–578
setting text box properties, 584–585
specifying record source, 566–567
changing and deleting data on, 550–551
choosing width and height of, 565
customizing, 609–683
customizing controls, 526

Customizing, 609–683
adding fields, 610–611
adjusting layout of controls, 616–617
cautions setting control validation rules, 670
cautions setting control validation rules, 670
colors and special effects for, 645–646
colors and special effects for, 645–646
completing form design, 640–642
dragging and dropping field in Layout view, 623–624
dragging and dropping field in Layout view, 623–624
dragging and dropping field in Layout view, 623–624
enabling and locking controls, 584–585, 662
enabling and locking controls, 584–585, 662
fonts, 648–650
fonts, 648–650
formatting column of controls, 630–631
formatting column of controls, 630–631
formatting properties, 651–661
layout view’s advantages for, 623, 642
lines and rectangles, 642–645
lines and rectangles, 642–645
lining up controls, 619–622, 625–626
lining up controls, 619–622, 625–626
moving controls within control layout, 626–630
moving controls within control layout, 626–630
placing controls into control layout, 635–638
placing controls into control layout, 635–638
properties controlling appearance, 670–680
removing control layout, 632–635, 640–642
scroll bar, 661
setting form and control defaults, 680–683
setting tab order, 662–663
sizing controls to fit content, 612–616
sizing window to fit form, 622
snapping controls to grid, 617–619
defining
default templates for, 682–683
structure in Design view, 114–117
Detail section of
about, 518–519
grid dots in, 564–565
selecting width and height, 566
displaying photographs in, 9
Edit and Navigation modes for, 541
editing
data in Form view, 119–120
XML U SYSRibbons table in, 1269
emphasizing fields with rectangles, 644–645
events
detecting filters, 876
opening and closing, 870–871
trapped keyboard and mouse, 876–878
triggering macros, 560
understanding sequence in editing, 882–885
exporting XML, 1250–1254
filtering, 551, 554–556
font guidelines for, 650
formatting properties for, 670–680
border styles, 675–676
controlling filtering and modifications, 673–674
listing of property sheet All tab, 676–680
navigation options, 671–672
pop-up or modal forms, 672–673
restricting views for users, 670–671
window controls, 675
function of, 114
headers and footers in, 518–519
hyperlinks in, 547–548
justified formats for Form Wizard, 597
keyboard shortcuts for, 541–543
linking to subform with filter, 1098–1099
locating rows in recordset, 1104
macros
for opening secondary, 921–924
synchronizing related, 924–928
making design changes on finished, 589
modal, 524–525, 673
modifying, 212
keyboard options for, 392–393
in Layout view, 118–119
moving around, 539–541
navigation buttons and command icons for, 540
opening in Dialog mode, 1058–1059
PivotTables and PivotCharts in, 536–539
pop-up
formatting properties for, 672–673
synchronizing, 1101–1104
working with, 523–524
prefixes in names of sample, 525
printing, 518, 557–558
procedural vs. object-oriented programming of,
560–562
project, 1547–1565
applying server filters, 1558–1561
changing Default Max Records property, 1555–1557
configuring input parameters, 1561–1565
differences in, 1547–1554
fetching recordsets, 1548
properties for, 1552–1554
setting options for, 1549–1551
setting recordset type, 1554–1555
similarities with database forms, 1547
unsupported in Layout view, 1552
property sheets for, 116–117
providing custom query by, 1086–1093
relationship to other Access objects, 100–101
searching for data in, 551–554
setting datasheet format for in Datasheet view, 1145
simplifying data input, 601–607
toggle buttons, check boxes, and option buttons,
605–607
using combo and list boxes, 601–605
sorting field data in, 551, 554
split, 522, 590–591
subforms, 522–523
switchboard, 1305–1310
checking for duplicate keyboard shortcuts,
1305–1306
designing in Switchboard Manager, 1306–1310
synchronizing with class event, 1101–1104
tab controls, 530
testing code for related records when deleting record,
1074–1075
totals queries not useful in, 435
triggering data task from related, 1105–1109
uses of, 517–518
viewing
data in, 539
fields for, 115–116
Visual Basic form modules, 944
Forms collections, 919, 987–988. See also forms
Forms object type, 48
Formulas button, 475
forward slash (/)
   dividing numeric expressions with, 365, 373
   operator precedence for, 367
   "forward slash (\/)", 1528
forward slash* (\*), 1528
four-arrow cross-hair mouse pointer, 581
four-digit year values, 191–192, 651, 1489
FoxPro. See also Visual FoxPro
   exporting data to, A82–A83
   specifying source for tables with IN clause, A46, A47
frm prefix, 525
FROM clause, 464, A41–A44
fsub prefix, 525
FTP (File Transport Protocol), 1138
FULL [OUTER] JOIN statement, A42
full outer joins, 1502
Fully Enclosed option (Access Options dialog box), 612
Function Parameters tab (Properties window), 1518, 1519
function queries, 1525
function reference tables, A85–A91
   arithmetic, A85–A86
   conversion, A86–A87
   date/time, A87
   logic, A88
   string, A89–A90
   user interface/system/file system, A90–A91
Function statement
   about, 1006–1007
   placing in middle of VB procedures, 947
functional dependence, A21–A23
functions
   about, 1005
   adding
   to Expression Builder, 372
   to project, 1495–1496
aggregate
   about, A35
   available as Group By options in query designer, 1506
   defining in totals queries, 435–436, 437
   limitations updating, 1508
   using in SELECT queries, A35
Avg, 437
Count, 437
CurrentDb, 989
Date, 503, 830–831
date and time, 375–376
DateDiff, 365–368, 373
DatePart, 365
declaring, 1006–1007
defined, 1493
defining as method, 1005
domain, 1057
First, 437
Format, 436
in-line, 1513–1519
   available properties for, 1517–1519
   building, 1514–1516
   constructing to create updatable recordsets, 1514
   declaring parameter to filter, 1515, 1516
   input parameters to control data returned with, 1561–1565
   naming parameters for, 1517
   reasons for using, 1513
   server filters with forms bound to, 1558
testing, 1516–1517
IsNothing, 1056
IsNull, 930–931
Last, 437
logic, A88
Max and Min, 437
MsgBox, 911, 932, 933
Now, 831
project file, 135
querying Access project file with, 1493
Reconnect, 1323
reference tables, A85–A91
   arithmetic, A85–A86
   conversion, A86–A87
   date/time, A87
   logic, A88
   string, A89–A90
   user interface/system/file system, A90–A91
scalar
   defined, 1493
   including in parentheses, 1542
   table-valued functions vs., 1544
   text table-valued vs., 1543
StDev, 437
Sum, 437, 446–447
text scalar, 1541–1543
text table-valued, 1543–1545
Var, 437
WriteHTML, 1154–1156

G
General tab (Design view), 161–165
General tab (Options dialog box), 949
Get External Data - Access Database dialog box, 271, 296
Get External Data - dBASE File dialog box, 261, 263, 299
Get External Data - Excel Spreadsheet dialog box, 276, 281, 300
Get External Data - SharePoint Site wizard, 1187–1190
importing source data from, 1187–1188
saving import steps, 1189–1190
selecting lists for import to Access, 1188, 1189
linking data source with, 1191–1195
specifying lists, 1192–1193
Get External Data - Text File dialog box, 286
Get External Data - XML File wizard, 1254
Getting Started screen
about, 21–22, 102
Blank Database icon on, 148
Blank Database task pane, 196
global settings in Access Options dialog box, 87–97
global variables, 961
GoTo statement, 1020–1021
grand totals
calculating in report footer, 843–844
creating, 839–840
graphical calendar, 1063–1069
greater than (>) values
comparing values with, 169
returning query results with, 1503, A42
greater than or equal to sign (>=)
comparing values with, 168, 169
returning query results with, 1503, A42
Grid X and Grid Y properties, 587, 760
grid dots
property settings making invisible, 587
setting color or removing, 564–565
grid pane (query designer), 1497, 1500, 1503–1507
gridlines
setting default datasheet options for Web, 1144
Sunken or Raised option disabling in Datasheet
Formatting dialog box, 1146
Group, Sort, And Total pane, 761–769
adding new group level on grid, 764
changing grouping and sorting priorities, 768–769
data types unavailable in, 763
defining report groups, 761, 762–763
entering titles, 766–767
group interval options, 765–766
grouping specifications and data types, 765
headers/footers options for reports, 767–768
illustrated, 762
opening, 761–762
printing options for groupings, 768
selecting totals options in, 766
sort order and options in, 764–765
understanding grouping options, 818
Group button, 642–643
Group By button, 1505
GROUP BY clause
overview of, A44–A45
selecting Group By options in query designer, 1506
uses of, 464, A65–A66
group intervals
effect of groupings on, 818
selecting, 765–766
setting in Report Wizard, 779–780
Grouping & Totals group, 761
Grouping Intervals dialog box, 780
grouping macros, 897–900
groupings
about report, 736
adding to report in Layout view, 792–795
adding values across report, 837–838
changing priorities of, 768–769
data types and specifications for, 765
defining report criteria for sorting and, 816–818
moving grouped controls, 642–643
printing options for, 768
setting in Report Wizard, 779–780
understanding options for, 818
groups
adding, 59–60
adding to contextual tabs, 1276–1279
creating grouping options, 56–58
custom
creating object shortcuts in, 63–67
dragging and dropping objects into, 66
hiding, 67–69
modifying in custom categories, 59–63
renaming, 59, 60
working with, 53–55
disabling unused, 1283–1284
display order for, 61
filtering objects by, 49, 50, 81–82
found on Database Tools tab, 44–45
included in
Object Type category, 57
Tables And Related Views category, 57
macro, 897–898
Navigation Pane
collapsing in, 49
initial placement of, 62–63
report headers and footers for contact, 739–741
H
handles, control, 580–581
hard drive space requirements, 1341
hardware requirements for Access, 1341
HasModule property, 944
HAVING clause, 464, A45
headers
Add New button in, 545
form
every, of, 518–519
multiple-page, 520
report
about, 739–740, 741
building report with or without, 767
displaying page numbers in, 832–833
repeating on subreports, 851–854
height of form, 565
hexadecimal code for color names, A93–A99
Hidden check box (Properties dialog box), 70, 75
hidden columns in SharePoint lists, 1206, 1219
Hide Details button, 476, 477
Hide Duplicates property, 840–841
hidng
document tabs, 85–86
existing Ribbon elements, 1271–1272
Navigation Pane
on application startup, 1311
textual tabs hidden when collapsed, 739
custom groups and object shortcuts, 67–71
options on Microsoft Office Button, 1300–1301
redundant report values, 840–841, 842
status bar, 1311
Unassigned Objects group, 67, 68, 74
Home tab, 24, 42
horizontally
moving one or more controls, 621
selecting all controls in horizontal area, 588, 600
hourglass mouse pointer, 897
Housing.accdb database
displaying list of tables for, 105–106
function of reports for, 120–121
macros in, 128–130
modules of, 130–132
role of forms in, 114
.htm file type, 1237, 1243–1245
HTML (Hypertext Markup Language), 1128–1135. See also HTML forms
acceptance of XML and, 1235
editing, 1134–1135
exporting datasheet with formatting to, 1146–1148
generating HTML page from Access report, 1151–1154
members for HTML objects, 1132
missing graphic or background on Web page, 1150
static documents in, 1140–1158
customizing appearance ofDatasheet view, 1143–1148
designing and using output templates, 1148–1151
tag members, 1131–1134
tags
applying to complex Web page, 1133–1134
browsers’ rendering of, 1131
common coding, 1129–1131
commonly used members of, 1133
viewing behind Web page, 1128
writing from Visual Basic, 1154–1158
HTML editors, 1128
HTML files
opening in browser after export complete, 1147
output options for exported, 1147–1148
HTML forms, 305–322
choosing recipients for, 320–321
collecting data with, 307–308
customizing message, 318–319
data types unavailable for, 311
date to stop processing replies, 315
defining collection fields as lookup values, 324
e-mail addresses for, 315–317
filling out, 322–325
finding addresses in table, 317–318
formatting Rich Text fields in, 324
getting started with, 306–307
Hyperlink data types in, 321
including lookup values in, 324–325
InfoPath forms vs., 327
instructing recipient to click Reply, 319
new or updated data collection for, 308–309
previewing message in Outlook, 321–322
processing live data on Web pages with, 1160
reply processing for, 312–313
selecting data to collect in, 309–310
wizard’s summary of process, 320
HTML Output Options dialog box, 1147–1148, 1150
HTML template tokens, 1149
HTTP (Hypertext Transport Protocol), 1138
Hyperlink data type, 158, 160
about, 397
collecting data via e-mail with, 321
converting, 227
example of converting, 229–230
hyperlinks
activating, 398
adding or editing in forms, 547–548
bug fixed for mailto: protocol prefix, 1062
editing, 400–401
fixing e-mail, 1061–1062
inserting, 398–400
viewing, 397–398
Hypertext Markup Language. See HTML (Hypertext Markup Language)
Hypertext Transport Protocol (HTTP), 1138
I Want The Combo Box To Look Up The Values In A Table
Or Query option (Combo Box Wizard), 602
1-bar, 802–803
icons
  action query, 490
  asterisk, 390
  Blank Database, 148
  delete query, 490
  filter, 408
  font name, 649
  linked data source, 260
  linked SharePoint Services table indicator, 1193
  make-table queries, 490
  mouse pointer
    crosshairs, 581, 643
    double arrow, 580, 581
    hourglass, 897
    rectangular, 352, 353
    pencil, 390, 1229
  viewing filter, 408
@@IDENTITY system variable, 1531, 1533, 1534, 1535
If...Then...Else statement, 1021–1022
If/ELSE statements, 1531, 1532
Ignore Duplicate Key check box (Properties dialog box), 1473, 1474
IIS (Internet Information Services), 1159
images
  embedding photographs in reports, 744–745
  loading into custom Ribbon controls, 1299–1300
  missing graphic on Web page, 1150
Immediate window (VBE), 952–956
  executing Visual Basic commands in, 952–953
  illustrated, 945, 955
  using breakpoints in, 954–956
IMPORT operator, A35, A36
Import Objects dialog box, 269, 272
Import Specification dialog box, 291
Import Spreadsheet Wizard, 277–279, 280
Import Text Wizard, 287–290, 291
Import XML dialog box, 1255
importing. See also collecting data via e-mail
  Access objects, 271–273
dBASE files, 260–264
  linking vs., 259–260
  modifying imported tables, 292
  objects with macro action, A116, A117
Paradox files, 265–266
  reasons for, 253
  SharePoint list to Access, 1186–1191
  spreadsheets, 273–282
  fixing errors in imported data, 280–282
  preparing for import, 274–275
  SQL tables, 266–270
text files, 282–291
XML files, 1254–1260
xsd files, 1255
ImportXML command, 1256
IN clause
  Access' addition of, A34
  overview, A46–A47
IN operator, 169, 360–361
IN predicate, A47–A48
indenting Visual Basic coding, 948–949
indexes
  about, 90
  adding project, 1471–1475
  creating unique, 1473
  defined, 188
  ignoring duplicate key for unique, 1474
  limitations of, 201
  multiple-field, 190–191, 1219
  selecting imported spreadsheet fields for, 278
  single-field, 188–189
Indexes window, 190
Indexes/Keys tab (Properties dialog box), 1472, 1473, 1475
infinity symbol, 185
InfoPath forms, 327–337
  allowing multiple rows per reply, 314–315
  choosing to use, 307–308, 328–329
  collecting new or updated data, 329–330
  compatibility with Internet Explorer, 1342
  data collection steps with, 327–328
  deleting records in, 340
  filling out, 337–341
  HTML forms vs., 327
  managing and resending data messages, 343–345
  multiple records within, 314
  processing replies
    manually, 341–343
    methods for, 331–332
  selecting source and table for e-mail address, 332–334
  sending messages, 336–337, 340–341
  specifying data to collect, 330–331
  warning messages for, 335–336
  writing message for, 334–335
information, A10
inheritance, 354
In-Line Function tab (Properties window), 1518
inline functions, 1513–1519
  available properties for, 1517–1519
  building, 1514–1516
  constructing to create updatable recordsets, 1514
in-line functions, continued
  declaring parameter to filter, 1515, 1516
  defined, 1493
  input parameters to control data returned with,
    1561–1565
  reasons for using, 1513
  server filters with forms bound to, 1558
  testing, 1516–1517
INNER JOIN statement, A42
inner joins, 414–421
  defined, 414
  editing fields on one side of, 419
  selecting tables for, 415
  input for application tasks, A11
  Input Mask property, 1063
  Input Mask settings, 661
  Input Mask Wizard, 171–174
input masks
  limitations of, 174
  list of characters for, 170–171
  missing characters in, 174
  placeholder characters for, 171, 172
  storing formatting characters with data, 173
  time values prevented with, 361
  unable to set defined default value in date/time field,
    1063
input parameters
  server filters vs., 1572
  setting for forms, 1561–1565
  using in project reports, 1572–1577
  using separate queries with filters vs., 1563
Input Parameters property, 1574–1575
Insert ActiveX Control dialog box, 727–728
Insert Hyperlink dialog box, 400, 547
Insert SQL button, 1530
INSERT statement (append query), A73–A75
Insert Subdatasheet dialog box, 389
inserting
  control labels, 581
  fields, 220–222
  files in attachment fields, 546
  hyperlinks, 398–400
  Install Now button, 1346
Installation Options tab (Microsoft Office dialog box),
  1344, 1348
installing software, 1341–1360
  converting from previous release of Access, 1358–1360
  hardware requirements for, 1341
  Microsoft Office system, 1342–1349
  entering information on User Information tab,
    1345–1346
  options for first-time installations, 1342–1347, 1348
  setting default location on File Location tab, 1345
  starting setup program, 1342
upgrading previous Office version, 1347–1349
instances, 5
International Organization for Standardization (ISO),
  1128, 1236
Internet Explorer
  browser’s rendering of tags, 1131
  color names in, A93–A99
  display of complex Web page, 1134
  downloading SharePoint database with, 1224
  simple Web page in, 1130
  version compatible with Office, 1342
  viewing HTML behind Web page, 1128
Internet Information Services (IIS), 1159
Internet Protocol (IP), 1137
Internet SMTP/POP3 service, 1341
intervals
  settings for DateDiff function, 365–366
  using values in DatePart function, 365
IP (Internet Protocol), 1137
IPX/SPX protocol, 1138
IRibbonUI methods, 1298
IS NOT NULL operator, 168, 169
IsNothing function, 1056
IsNull function, 930–931
ISO (International Organization for Standardization),
  1128, 1236
Issue List form, 24
Issues list (SharePoint Services), 1230, 1233
Issues Sample database
  categories listed for, 49
  customizing categories for, 54–55
  opening, 46
  selecting, 23
Issues template, 152, 153

J
JavaScript, 1128
Join Line tab (Properties dialog box), 1502, 1503
Join Properties dialog box, 416, 423
joins
  creating with in-line functions, 1514–1515
  defined, 5
  inner, 414–421
  joining tables on zero-length strings, 166
  left, right, and full outer, 1502
  normalizing joined table data, 414
  outer, 425–431
  relationships between foreign and primary keys in, 416
  specifying
with FROM clause, A42–A44
for project queries, 1500–1503
update limitations in queries using, 468–469
using Find Unmatched Query Wizard with more than one field in, 433
jumping
to objects in Navigation Pane, 46
to statement with GoTo, 1020–1021
justified formats for forms in, 597

K
Keep Your System Running tool, 19
keyboard. See also keys
modifying behavior for datasheets and forms, 392–393
moving
fields with mouse and, 219
between parts of windows from, 222
trapping events for, 876–878
keyboard shortcuts
checking for duplicate, 1306
combo box, 543
Datasheet view, 386, 391
field, 542–543
form, 541–543
keys. See also primary keys
AutoKeys macro codes for, 1316
Ctrl
AutoKeys macro intercepting Ctrl+F4, 1315–1316
intercepting Ctrl+F4 combinations, 1315–1316
noncontiguous selections using, 579, 1082
drawing straight lines while holding down Shift, 643
Enter, 392
Esc, 740
modifying behavior of Left and Right Arrow, 392
moving between parts of Design view window with F6, 222
keywords
avoiding selection criteria as, 356
Me, 990
TOP, A62

L
labels
adjusting Form Wizard, 599–600
creating shadowed effect behind, 650
deleting and attaching control, 581
highlighting against dark background, 587–588
lining up custom form, 619–622
mailing
Avery label formats, 754, 1117
printing with data from multiple tables, 463–468
setting up multiple-column reports as, 753–754
using partial page of, 1115–1118
PivotChart display, 482–483
printing company and contact, 754
report column, 770–771
sizing to fit form content, 612–616
landscape orientation for reports, 751, 752, 755
Last function, 437
layout
justified formats for forms, 597
modifying in SharePoint Datasheet view, 1178
selecting choices for data in Form Wizard, 697
selecting Report Wizard report, 781–782
Layout view
aligning and positioning controls in, 623–642
adding control padding, 638–640
advantages in, 623, 642
completing form design, 640–642
control anchoring, 624–625
dragging and dropping field, 623–624
dragging selected controls to new column, 634–635
formatting column of controls, 630–631
incorrect field positioning on form grid, 627
lining up controls, 625–626
moving controls within control layout, 626–630
placing controls into control layout, 635–638
removing control layout, 632–635, 640–642
resizing controls, 631–632, 640
building reports in
adding grouping and sorting, 792–796
adjusting width of contact field, 802
applying AutoFormat, 807–809
positioning fields with vertical I-bar, 802–803
resizing text box controls, 797–798
selecting record source, 791–792
starting with blank report, 790–792
totals added to records, 804–807
usefulness of, 797
working with control layouts, 797–804
disabling, 1304
events unavailable in, 873
forms
horizontal ruler unavailable for form grid, 633
polishing subform design, 698–700
preventing users from opening in, 671
working with desktop database, 118–119
modifying Report Wizard reports in, 784–790
accenting detail with background color, 788–789
changing control properties, 787, 788
resizing columns and fields, 784–785, 786
resizing and repositioning controls, 785–787
opening Form window in, 563
project forms and reports unsupported in, 1552
viewing desktop database reports in, 125–127
left arrow button (<), 593
Left Arrow key, 392
left joins, 1502
LEFT [OUTER] JOIN statement, A42
legends for PivotCharts, 480–481
less than or equal to sign (<=)
  comparing values with, 168, 169
  returning query results with, 1503, A42
less than sign (<)
  comparing values with, 168, 169
  indicating lowercase characters, 655
  returning query results with, 1503, A42
licensing agreements for SQL Server 2005 Express Edition, 1350
LIKE operator, 169, 360–361
LIKE predicate, A48–A49
Line tool, 642, 644
lines
  adding to custom forms, 642–643
  ensuring straight, 643
  formatting control's border, 583–584
  inserting in report, 771, 773
Link Child Fields property, 705, 706
Link Master Fields property, 705, 706
Link Tables dialog box, 297
Linked Table Manager, 303–304, 1323
linked tables
  designing, A28
  for desktop database, 1320–1328
  splitting tables with Database Splitter wizard, 1320–1323
  verifying and correcting linked table connections, 1323–1328
fields of
  defining, 181–183
  one-to-many relationships with, 184
indicator for SharePoint Services, 1193
linking
  with other Access databases, 295–298
  SQL tables to Access databases, 301–302
  modifying, 302–303
  unlinking, 303
linking data, 1098–1104. See also linked tables
  about, 292
  button for, 1098–1099, 1109–1114
  Connect property when, 297
dbBASE and Paradox files, 298–299
default record locking settings for, 294, 295
disconnecting from SharePoint Services when working offline, 1227–1228
ersors with, 301
  icon for linked data source, 260
importing vs., 259–260
linking
  forms with filter, 1098–1099
  to report with filter, 1099–1101
performance considerations for, 293–295
PivotChart to form, 733–734
reasons for, 253
security information when, 293
SharePoint lists
  to Access, 1191–1195
  maintaining link to User Information List, 1194
  options for, 1196–1198
subforms
  automatic, 706
  setting data relationships for, 705
synchronizing two forms with class event, 1101–1104
text or spreadsheet files, 300–301
unable to connect to database with multiple data sources, 302
List Box button, 569
list boxes
  about, 527–528
  combo boxes vs., 528
  formatting properties for data display, 651–661
  illustrated, 528
  keyboard shortcuts for, 543
  multiple-selection, 1082–1086
Size To Fit command unavailable for, 614
List Options submenu for Windows SharePoint Services, 1196–1198
List Width lookup property, 244
lists in SharePoint, 216
adding columns to, 1175–1179
built-in views for, 1173
creating from within Access, 1198–1207
  creating custom list, 1203–1207
  using existing list template, 1199–1203
defined, 1168
deleting, 1198
diagnostic data in, 1168–1172
importing to Access from SharePoint Services, 1186–1191
linking to Access, 1191–1195
missing records in imported, 1191
modifying design of, 1196
password protection for linked, 1198
permissions for, 1197
relinking to new site, 1197
restoring items to, 1181–1182
similarity between Access tables and, 1169
using options for linked lists, 1196–1198
LoadCustomUI method, 1285–1286, 1287
loading. See also randomly loading data
frmProductAdd form, 1061
images into custom Ribbon controls, 1299–1300
Ribbon into Access data projects, 1286
times for form and report modules, 944
USysRibbons table during startup, 1267–1268
XML for custom Ribbon, 1284–1287
Locals window (VBE)
about, 946
examining variable and object values in, 955
illustrated, 945
Location dialog box, 1214
Locked property for controls, 584–585, 662
locked record errors, 512
locking
button on form, 573
controls, 584–585, 662
query records, 462
log in as system administrator, 1452
logic functions, A88
Lookup properties, 240–245
cautions using for fields, 242
defining query, 353
number values and sorting of, 381
overview of, 243–244
lookup values
avoiding data collection fields defined as, 324
eliminating duplicate, 238
including in HTML form, 324–325
unable to specify for SQL Server 7.0 tables, 1470
Lookup Wizard, 158, 245
loops
Change events contributing to endless, 873
defining multiple executions with Do...Loop statement, 1017–1018
exercising code within For Each, 1020
Lotus 1-2-3. See spreadsheets
lowercase characters (<), 655

M
Machine Data Source tab (Select Data Source dialog box), 268
macro actions, 916–918, A101–A118
AskEdit macro, 933
avoiding SendKeys, A110
built-in Visual Basic constants for, 1028
categories of
building custom menu and executing menu commands, A112
controlling display and focus, A113–A114
executing queries, A106–A107
handling errors, A118
informing user of macro actions, A115
modifying objects, A115–A117
opening/closing Access objects, A102–A104
overview, A101
printing data, A105–A106
running another application, A118
searching for data, A111
setting values, A109
testing conditions and controlling action flow, A107–A108
Trusted column, A101
using temporary variables, A117
Clear MacroError, 916
defining multiple, 895–897
executing, 1026–1027
OpenForm, 922–923
opening list of, 891–892
searching for data, A111
SyncWeddingAndCity macro, 926
trusted and not trusted, 916–918
viewing
complete list of, 892
in Macro window, 929–930
Visual Basic equivalents for, 1028
Macro Builder, 904–905
macro design window. See Macro window
macro groups
about, 897–898, 928
understanding and using, 929–934
Macro Name column (Macro window), 891, 921, 922
macro objects
creating group of named macro procedures in, 898
creating set of named actions within, 899
name of, 900
SampleMacro, 129
Macro Single Step dialog box, 894
Macro window, 890–893
argument boxes in, 892–893
automatically displaying Macro Name and Condition columns in, 891, 922
entering macro arguments in, 890–891
illustrated, 891
layout of, 890–891
moving between upper and lower parts of, 893
not trusted macro actions in, 918
opening Actions list in, 891–892
viewing macros in macro groups, 929
MacroError object, 916, A118
macros, 887–940. See also events; macro objects; Macro window
actions
avoiding SendKeys, A110
Macros, actions, continued

Building and executing menus and commands, A112
Categories of, A101–A118
Clear MacroError, 916
Controlling display and focus, A113–A114
Displaying messages or beeping, A115
Handling errors, A118
Not trusted, 916–918
Running another application, A118
Setting values, A109
Using temporary variables, A117
Working with objects, A115–A117
Adding to Quick Access Toolbar, 30–31
Advantages of, 128
AutoExec
About, 890
Starting applications with, 1310, 1312
Using, 896
AutoKeys, 1052, 1315–1316
calling MessageBox function, 911
Conditional expressions in, 900–901
Content security and, 34–35
Converting to Visual Basic, 938–940
defined, 100
defining multiple actions in, 129–130, 895–897
Embedded, 901–907
Creating, 904–906
deleting, 906–907
Editing, 902–904
Saved with form or report control, 904
error trapping, 910–915
clearing MacroError object, 916, A118
Process using, 913–915
unactivated, 912–913
grouping, 897–900
Hourglass automatically restored after running, 897
Location in Unrelated Objects category, 51–52
Malicious, 916
Modifying, 212
Name of, 900
Opening secondary forms with, 921–924
Passing status information between linked forms, 934–935
Resetting values for validation, 935–938
Recommended for applications, 890
Referencing
Controls and properties for forms and reports, 920
Form and report objects, 919
Form and report properties, 919–920
Subforms and subreports, 920–921
Temporary variables in, 991
Relationship to other Access objects, 101
Resetting Page property value with, 833
Revising order on Quick Access Toolbar, 32
Saving, 893–894
Single stepping through, 894, 951
Synchronizing related forms, 924–928
Temporary variables in, 907–910
Testing, 894–895
Triggering with form events, 560
Untrusted locations
Disabling in, 1225
Enabling for, 38
Uses of, 887, 888–889
Validating data, 928–934
Visual Basic
Equivalents for macro actions, 1028
Executing macro actions in, 1026–1027
Using macros with, 890, 1052
Using VB procedures instead of, 1052–1053
Macros object type, 48
Mail, 1341
Mail merge documents, A81–A82
Mailing labels
Avery label formats, 754, 1117
Printing
Company and contact, 754
With data from multiple tables, 463–468
Setting up multiple-column reports as, 753–754
Using partial page of, 1115–1118
mailto: protocol prefix, 1062
Main forms, 706–710. See also Subforms
Make-Table dialog box, 500
Make-table queries
Append vs., 502
Assigning alias to field lists in, 496, 497
Command on Design contextual tab for, 488
Converting from select query, 500
Creating, 496–500
defined, 485
Icon for, 490
Limitations of, 501
Running, 500–502
SELECT...INTO statements as, A75–A76
Verifying data in, 496
Malicious macros, 916
Manually processing e-mail replies, 321–322, 341–343
Many-to-many relationships
About, 5
defining linking table to create, 1077–1078
Embedding subforms to reflect, 693
Order-entry examples demonstrating, A8
Many-to-one forms
About, 686
designing all query fields in, 688–691
How related information displays in, 691
Microsoft Office system 1405

many-to-one query as record source for, 687–688
margins, 736
Max function, 437
Max Records property, 462, 1550, 1555
Maximize button
disabling, 675
not in window, 109
using, 108
MDAC (Microsoft Data Access Components), 981
.mdb files
about, 6
Access architecture and compatibility with, 979
compatibility with temporary variables, 910
creating compiled version of, 272
embedded macros incompatible with, 907
user-level security support for, 12
.mdf files, 1455–1456
MDI. See multiple-document interface (MDI)
Me object and keyword, 990
members
commonly used tag, 1133
HTML object, 1132
Memo data type, 226–227
memory requirements, 1341
menus
macro actions building and executing commands on, 1112
shortcut
accessing table’s commands from, 106–107
displaying single Navigation Pane categories with, 81
Subdatasheet, 388
submenus
Bitmap Image Object, 534
view by, 76
viewing categories of, 72
Message Bar
enabling or disabling, 38
security alerts on, 35
message boxes
confirming deleting or pasting, 396
macro actions displaying, 1115
MsgBox function for, 911, 932, 933
messages. See also data collection messages; error messages; warning messages
action query error, 513–514
e-mail data collection, 318–319, 334–335
form information displayed in, 518
methods
ActiveX, 7–8
defined, 560
defining subroutines as, 1005
Find, 1104
FindFirst, 1104
IRibbonUI, 1298
LoadCustomUI, 1285
object, 993–1005
executing commands with DoCmd object, 1005
using ADO recordsets, 1001–1005
Visual Basic, 993
working with DAO recordsets, 994–997
OpenRecordset, 994–995
Quit, 1328
referencing in variables created by macros, 991
RunCommand, 1027
Microsoft Access Database Engine (DBEngine)
about, 978
DBEngine object created by, 979, 982–984
Microsoft Data Access Components (MDAC), 981
Microsoft Exchange, 1341
Microsoft Exchange Server 2000, 1342
Microsoft Expression Web, 1128, 1133, 1139, 1159
Microsoft FoxPro. See FoxPro; Visual FoxPro
Microsoft InfoPath. See InfoPath forms
Microsoft Internet Information Services (IIS), 1159
Microsoft Mail, 1341
Microsoft MVPs (Most Valuable Professionals), 17
Microsoft .NET Framework, 1159
Microsoft Office Access 2007. See Access
Microsoft Office Access dialog box, 546, 547
Microsoft Office Access Security Notice dialog box, 1338–1339
Microsoft Office Button
commands available from, 25–27
hiding options on, 1300–1301
using, 24, 25–27
Microsoft Office Excel. See Excel
Microsoft Office Genuine Advantage confirmation dialog box, 145, 146
Microsoft Office Live Web site, 1161–1162, 1166
Microsoft Office Outlook. See Outlook
Microsoft Office Security Options dialog box, 36
Microsoft Office system
Document Lists of Control IDs, 1270–1271
installing, 1342–1349
entering information on User Information tab, 1345–1346
first-time installation options, 1342–1347, 1348
hardware requirements for, 1341
setting default location on File Location tab, 1345
starting setup program, 1342
integrating with SharePoint Services, 1162–1163
product key for, 1342
upgrading previous version, 1347–1349
XML capabilities of, 1136–1137
Microsoft Office Trusted Location dialog box, 40
Microsoft Office Word mail merge documents, A81–A82
Microsoft Paint, 533
Microsoft SQL Server 2003. See SQL Server 2005
Microsoft SQL Server 2005 Express Edition Setup dialog box, 1352–1357
Microsoft SQL Server 2005 Setup dialog box, 1350, 1351–1352, 1357
Microsoft SQL Server Database Wizard, 1450–1451
Microsoft SQL Server Desktop Engine (MSDE), 132, 1494
Microsoft SQL Server Installation Wizard
Authentication Mode page, 1353–1354
Completing Microsoft SQL Server 2005 Setup page, 1357–1358
Configuration Options page, 1354, 1355
Error And Usage Report Settings page, 1354, 1355
Feature Selection page, 1352, 1353
Ready To Install page, 1355–1356
Registration Information page, 1352–1353
Setup Progress page, 1356–1357
System Configuration Check page, 1351–1352
Microsoft Visual Basic Scripting Edition (VBScript),
1128, 1158
Microsoft Visual FoxPro. See Visual FoxPro
Microsoft Visual Studio, 664, 1161
Microsoft Visual Studio .NET, 1131, 1160–1161
Microsoft Windows Installer setup file (.msi), 1340
Microsoft Windows Internet Explorer. See Internet Explorer
Microsoft Windows Vista. See Windows Vista
migrating database to SharePoint site, 1207–1233. See also publishing database to SharePoint site
about, 1207–1208
opening database from SharePoint, 1223–1226
publishing vs., 1207
republishing after changing database, 1207, 1219–1222
steps to move database, 1212–1219
synchronizing changes after working offline, 1230–1233
ways SharePoint handles migrated data, 1218–1219
working offline, 1226–1229
Min function, 437
Min Max Button property, 675
Minimize button
disabling, 675
not in window, 109
using, 108
minus sign (−)
arithmetic operator, 365
as character in format string, 653, 655
operator precedence for, 367
missing background images in Form Wizard, 593, 690
missing characters in input masks, 174
Mod operator
function of, 365
integer as result of operations with, 373
operator precedence for, 367
modal forms
about, 524–525
formatting and using, 673
Modal property, 672
Modify Button dialog box, 31
Modify This View command (SharePoint), 1176, 1177
modifying list design (SharePoint Services), 1196
modifying table design. See also Table Analyzer Wizard before starting, 204–205
changing
data attributes, 225–233
field names, 212–217
field properties, 232–233
maximum length of data, 230–231
primary key, 248–250
checking object dependencies, 207–209
compacting database, 250–251
converting data types, 226–230
copying fields, 222–224
dealing with conversion errors, 231–232
deleting
fields, 225
tables, 209–210
eliminating duplicate lookup values, 238
inserting fields, 220–222
Lookup properties, 240–245
making database backups before, 205–207
modifying imported tables, 292
moving fields, 217–220
Multi-Value Lookup Fields, 245–248
reasons for, 203–204
reducing redundant data, 234
renaming tables, 211–212
reversing changes, 234
Table Analyzer Wizard recommendations for, 236
Module button, 1330
module objects (Visual Basic)
creating module with, 942–943
form and report modules vs., 944
modules, 130–132, 942–944
about, 100
class, 1009–1016
defined, 943, 1009
form and report, 944
Private statement in, 972–973
opening and entering address of SharePoint site and, 1213
showing details on migration, 1216
moving. See also migrating database to SharePoint site
columns, 150
controls
  grouped, 642–643
  horizontally or vertically, 621
  and sizing, 580–581
  within control layout, 626–630
cut objects to Clipboard, 210
fields, 217–220
HTTP-based messages to Outlook Inbox, 325
spreadsheet data to temporary table first, 275
within Macro window, 893
MSDE (Microsoft SQL Server Desktop Engine), 132, 1494
MsgBox action, 932
MsgBox function
  calling in macro, 911
  options settings for, 932
  return values for, 933
.msi files, 1340
MSys system tables, 1267
Multi Select property, 1084–1085, 1086
multiple constraint expressions, 1481
Multiple Items command, 592
multiple-column reports
  customizing width and height for, 753–754
  uses for, 754
multiple-document interface (MDI)
  about, 83–86
  displaying or hiding document tabs, 85–86
  working in, 85
multiple-field indexes, 190–191
multiple-page forms, 723–726
  controlling tabbing on, 1080–1082
  example of, 520
  illustrated, 725, 726
  inserting page break control, 724, 725
  planning, 724
  setting Cycle property for, 726, 1080
multiple-selection list boxes, 1082–1086
multiple-table queries, 686–691
multiplying integer with currency fields, 373
Multi-Value Lookup Fields
  Contact Type field as, 245, 529
  following normalization rules for, 248
  working with, 245–248
MVPs (Most Valuable Professionals), 17
name separators in Expression Builder, 373

names
  automatic generation of SQL Server database, 1451
  brackets around object, 372
  checking for possible duplicates, 1071–1073
  custom list, 1203–1204
  eliminating extra blanks in personal, 420
  field, 362
  AutoCorrect options for, 192–193
  brackets around, 362
  changing, 212–217
  characters for separating table and, 372, 373
  duplicate, 836
  fully qualifying, 372
  including spaces in XML, 1263
  omitting spaces in, 159, 216
  renaming in queries, 419
  requirements in expressions, 362
  separating names of SQL tables and, 373
  specifying in Import Text Wizard, 289
  truncated when exported to dBASE or Paradox, A80
  using in simple queries, 377–378
  valid characters for, 159

naming
  copied tables, 207
  parameters for functions and stored procedures, 1517
  tables split by Table Analyzer Wizard, 237
  Visual Basic variables, 966
  prefixes of sample form, 525
  public variables and constants, 963–964
  spaces not contained in property, 920
  SQL Server Rules for Identifiers, 1460
  tracking AutoCorrect information for, 208
  UNC path, 1323
  using exclamation points and periods in, 989–990

National Language (Unicode) literal, 1515

Navigate To Category (Navigation Pane), 48
  Navigation Buttons property, 671–672
  Navigation mode for forms, 541

Navigation Options dialog box
  creating custom categories in, 58
  illustrated, 56
  opening, 55–56
  ordering category and group display, 61
  revealing hidden shortcuts in, 72–75
  setting up grouping options, 56–58
  Show System Objects check box, 1267, 1269
  working with groups in custom categories, 59–63

Navigation Pane, 45–82. See also groups; Navigation Options dialog box
categories
  display of single, 81
  using custom groups and, 53–55
  viewing from submenus, 72

collapsing
  group in, 49
  hiding contextual tabs when collapsed, 739
  width of, 47

creating
  modules in, 131
  object shortcuts in custom groups, 63–67

database object list filtering in, 49, 50
displaying custom group names, 62–63
eMBEDDING subform from, 703

expanding, 47
exporting files from, 1245–1246
filtering objects by group, 81–82
function of, 45–47

hiding
  on application startup, 1311
  custom groups and object shortcuts in, 67–72

illustrated, 24, 46
initial placement of objects and groups in, 62–63
jumping to objects in, 46
manually sorting objects in, 77–78
new project's, 1457

Object Type category
displaying tables only, 105–106
filtering form objects, 114, 115
groups included in, 57
maximizing search for objects from, 82
unable to reorder display, 61
viewing objects organized in groups in, 105

object views in, 48–53

opening
  Navigation Options dialog box, 55–56
  queries from, 348
Query list in, 348
renaming object shortcuts, 70–72
revealing hidden shortcuts, 72–75
searching for database objects from, 78–82
setting up grouping options, 56–58
Single-Click options, 106

sorting and selecting views in, 76–77
Tables And Related Views category, 49–52
  adding groups to, 57
  filtering objects in, 52–53
  groups included in, 57
  maximizing search for objects from, 82
  switching to, 49–50
  unable to reorder display, 61
Unrelated Objects category in, 51–52
viewing module objects in database, 942–943
width of
  collapsing, 47
  maintained from last use, 103
.NET Framework, 1159
NetBEUI protocol, 1138
network protocols, 1138
networks
  Microsoft Office system installation on, 1342
  reducing traffic with server filters, 1572
New Item command, 1169
New Object button, 890
New Query dialog box
  creating new views, functions, and stored procedures from, 1496
  creating text table-valued function in, 1544
  illustrated, 1524
  selecting query wizard in, 432
new row indicator, 385
newsgroups for Access, 17
nonclustered indexes, 1471, 1472
noncontiguous selections
  choosing multiple, 1082–1086
  deselecting fields, 579
  holding down Ctrl key for, 579, 1082
  non-equi joins, A42
Normal template, 682
normalization, A19–A27
  field independence, A24–A26
  field uniqueness, A19–A20
  four rules of table design, A27
  functional dependence of fields on primary key, A21–A23
  rules for Multi-Value Lookup Fields, 248
  unique identifier or primary key, A20–A21
not trusted macros
  defined, 916
  listing of, 917–918
Notepad for Ribbon construction, 1270, 1271
NotInList event, 931, 1058–1061
Now function, 831
NULL predicate, A50
Null values
  about Null fields, 166
  allowing with check constraints, 1482
  concatenating in expressions, 364, 420
  converting to zero values, 446–447
  data type conversions setting content to, 226
  displaying in text fields, 657
  testing for with macro, 927
Number data type
  about, 158, 159
  converting, 228
  decimal fields in SharePoint Services converted to, 1219
  displaying Null values for, 657
  Format property setting for, 652
numbers
  adding report line, 846–848
  field properties for, 162
  formatting properties for, 652–654
  four-digit year formats, 191–192, 651, 1489
  page
    inserting in controls, 806
    report, 773–774, 830–833
    report grouping options for, 818

object dependencies, 207–209
Object Dependencies pane, 209
Object Designers category (Access Options dialog box), 90–91, 193–195, 415, 1489–1490
object frame, 534
Object list (Visual Basic Editor), 946–947
object methods, 993–1005
  about Visual Basic, 993
  executing commands with DoCmd object, 1005
  using ADO recordsets, 1001–1005
  working with DAO recordsets, 994–997
object model hierarchies, 978–987
  Access, 978–981
  ADO, 985–987
  DAO, 981–985
object shortcuts
  creating in custom groups, 63–67
  hiding, 69–72
  renaming, 70–72
  revealing hidden, 72–75
Object Type category (Navigation Pane)
  adding groups to, 57
  displaying tables only, 105–106
  filtering form objects, 114, 115
  groups included in, 57
  maximizing search for objects from, 82
  unable to reorder display, 61
  viewing objects organized in groups in, 105
object variables, 991–993
object-oriented programming, 560–562
objects. See also ActiveX Data Objects (ADO); Data Access Objects (DAO)
  cutting and moving, 210
  defined, 99
  designing tabbed documents for finding other, 86
  dimmed, 73–74
  dragging and dropping into custom groups, 66
  embedding in reports, 744–745
  filtering
    by group, 81–82
    form, 114, 115
objects, filtering, continued
  list of Navigation Pane, 49, 50, 52–53
  with Search Bar, 79–80
form, 574–578
importing
  Access, 271–273
  linking vs., 292
  read permission required when, 273
  selecting for import, 272–273
macro actions
  modifying, A115–A117
  opening/closing Access, A102–A104
macro objects, 897
maximizing search for all, 82
Me, 990
members for HTML, 1132
module, 942–943
names
  delimiting for SQL Server, 1460
  preceding with exclamation point, 989–990
  putting in brackets, 372
Navigation Pane
  categories, 53–58
  exploring in, 105
  initial placement in, 62–63
  jumping to from, 46
  opening with single-click, 106
  propagating changes for table, 204
  referencing form and report, 919
  relationship among Access, 100–101
renaming, 212
searching for database, 78–82
shortcuts
  creating in custom groups, 63–67
  revealing hidden, 72–75
  sorting, 76–78
system
  displaying in Navigation Pane, 1267
  recommended settings for, 1269
types of Access, 99–100
ODBC. See Open Database Connectivity (ODBC)
ODBC databases
  exporting data to, A82–A83
  query properties when connecting to, 462
ODBC Driver Manager, 254
ODBC Timeout property, 462
Office. See Microsoft Office system
Office Clipboard task pane, 395
OLE Object data type
  about, 158, 160
  changing Attachment data type to, 533
  difficulties with Web applications, 1069
OLE object field
  entering data in, 546
  indexes undefinable using, 189
On Error statement, 1029–1030
On Error macro action
  about, A118
  adding macro error handling with, 914, 915
  specifying macro in same macro object in, 911
one-to-many relationships
  database efficiency and, A28
  defining, 185–186
  linking table fields for, 184
one-to-one relationships, A28
Open Database Connectivity (ODBC)
  about, 253–255
  Access compatibility with, 9
  Access won't use for all file types, 268
  architecture of, 255
  ODBC databases
    creating data source as link to, 253–259
    exporting data to, A82–A83
    query properties when connecting to, 462
    specifying source for tables with IN clause, A46, A47
    using with dynamic Web pages, 1159, 1160
Open dialog box
  finding and opening files from, 23
  selecting databases from, 102–103
OpenForm action, 922–923
opening
  Access for first time, 19–20
  Access Options dialog box, 27, 84
  .accl files, 153
Collecting Data Using E-Mail Options dialog box, 313
Contacts.adp project file, 133
events for form and report, 870–871
existing databases, 22–25
Export - SharePoint Site wizard, 1183
File New Database dialog box, 144
Form window in Layout view, 563
Form Wizard, 688–689
IssuesSample.acdb database, 46
Navigation Options dialog box, 55–56
objects
  with macro, A102–A104
  with single- or double-click, 106
property sheets, 116–117, 575
queries in Design view, 112–113
query property sheet, 452
reports in Report view or Print Preview, 746
SQL Server Configuration Manager, 266–267
subdatasheets and filtering, 407
Switchboard Manager, 1307
AND
constructing multiple constraint expressions with, 1481
expressing in query designer, A55
results using OR vs., 357–359
truth tables for, A56
arithmetic expression, 365
Boolean
as selection criteria, 356
truth tables for, A56
using in query designer, A55
comparision
Between, In, and Like, 360–361
criteria selection with AND and OR, 357–360
Mod
function of, 365
integer as result of operations with, 373
OR
constructing multiple constraint expressions with, 1481
OR abbreviation vs., 356
results using AND vs., 357–359
truth tables for, A56
order of precedence in expressions, 367
symbols for comparison, 169
Option Button command, 714
option buttons
about, 526–527
setting field’s status with, 605–607
toggle buttons and check boxes vs., 606
Option Explicit statements (VB), 963
option groups
about, 526–527
displaying form values in, 714–716
Options dialog box. See also Access Options dialog box
customizing work with modules in, 948
tab options in, 948–950
OR operator
constructing multiple constraint expressions with, 1481
OR abbreviation vs., 356
results using AND vs., 357–359
truth tables for, A56
Oracle, importing data from, 266–270
ORDER BY clause
overview, A50–A52
specifying calculated column alias name with, A62
TOP n PERCENT clause and, 1510, 1511
using column names of clause in UNION queries, A52, A63, A69
ordering columns in project queries, 1503–1504
organizing tasks, A11–A13
Orientation property, 463
outer joins, 425–431
avoiding between two tables, 185
building simple, 425–426
defined, 425
finding unmatched, 426–430
full, 1502
Outlook
Access Data Collection Replies folder in, 331
automatic e-mail reply processing, 312–313, 325–326
Data Collection Status column, 341
filling out HTML forms, 322–325
moving HTTP-based messages to Outlook Inbox, 325
selecting as source for e-mail address, 315–316
output
controlling query, 452–454
data as task, A11
Output All Fields query property, 452–453
overlaying text boxes, 1096
P
Package Solution wizard, 1340
packaging and signing database, 1336–1339
Page Header section, 845
Page Index property, 721
page numbers
inserting in controls, 806
report, 773–774, 830–833
Page Numbers dialog box, 832–833
Page Order dialog box, 721
page orientation
printing reports in landscape or portrait, 751, 752, 755
selecting Report Wizard report, 781–782
Page property, 832–833
Page Setup dialog box, 751–755
Columns tab, 558, 753–754
Page tab, 558, 751–753
Print Options tab, 752
saving specific printer settings, 753
Page tab (Page Setup dialog box), 558, 751–753
pages. See also Web pages
Switchboard Manager, 1307
Paint, 535
panes. See also Navigation Pane
Group, Sort, And Total, 761–769, 818
Object Dependencies, 209
panes, continued
query designer, 1497–1498
about, 1497–1498
diagram, 1497, 1499, 1500–1503
grid, 1497, 1500, 1503–1507
SQL, 1498
Paradox
exporting Access data to, A80
importing files from, 265–266
linking files to Access databases, 293, 298–299
specifying source for tables with IN clause, A46, A47
parameter queries
parameter resolved from value chosen from another
form, 1565, 1576
PARAMETERS declarations in, A52–A54
prompting users for parameters for, 1572–1573
setting parameters with Input Parameters property,
1574–1575
parameter settings
OpenRecordset method, 994–995
RecordsetObject.Open, 1002–1003
parameters
adding to application shortcut target file name, 1332
basing stored procedure filters on, 1493
declaring as filter for in-line function query, 1515, 1516
defined, 1005
descriptive names for functions and stored procedures,
1517
filtering report on opening using date, 1121–1124
function and subroutine, 1005
prompting users to enter, 1572–1573
setting input, 1561–1565
setting for parameter query with Input Parameters property,
1574–1575
SQL and Access equivalent data types for, A53
using report input, 1572–1577
PARAMETERS declaration, A52–A54
parent tables, 185
parentheses ( )
adding to expressions, 370
as characters in format string, 653, 655
expression evaluation within, 367
scalar functions in, 1542
Partially Enclosed option (Access Options dialog box),
612
partitioning data in crosstab queries, 447–449
pass-through queries, 463
passwords
encrypting database with, 1334–1336
entering for database with linked SharePoint tables,
1198
logging in on SharePoint Services Web site, 1213–1214
Paste Table As dialog box, 207
pasting
copied data in Datasheet view, 394–396
copied fields, 223–224
copied tables, 207
message box confirming, 396
pencil icon, 390, 1229
percentage sign (%), 654
percentages, calculating grand total using, 840, 843–844
performance
effect of linked data on, 293–295
form fields defined as lookup values, 324
improving for critical tasks, A29
indexes and database, 1472
limiting rows fetched for project forms, 1548–1549
linked table, 1323
loading time of form and report modules, 944
PivotTable and PivotChart, 470
reconstructing queries for, A66
reducing network traffic with server filters, 1572
speeding up code with Me objects, 990
storing calculated value in table, 1114
subdatasheet properties with large tables, 179
Performance Analyzer, 1302–1303
period ( )
indicating decimal in numbers and currency, 653
rules for using with names, 990
separating table and field names with, 372, 373
permissions
Create Database, 1452
read, 273
SharePoint Services lists, 1197
photographs
deleting and updating image path for, 1070–1071
displaying in forms, 9
embedding in reports, 744–745
working with linked, 1069
PivotChart forms, 730–734
building, 731–732
designing, 536–539, 730
embedding linked PivotChart, 730, 733–734
PivotChart view, 479, 873
PivotCharts. See also PivotChart forms
adding display labels, 480–483
building query for report, 860–861
correcting data field caption for, 482
defined, 470
designing, 478–483
embedding in report, 861–863
event properties detecting changes to, 870, 878–880
illustrated, 480, 483
including axis on, 481
Report ML version of, 1250, 1252
presentation layout extension documents (.xsl), 1237, 1243
Presentation tab (Export XML dialog box), 1248, 1249
preventing
Ctrl+F4 with AutoKeys macro, 1315–1316
data modification directly on datasheet, 413
design changes in applications, 1311
endless loop with Change event, 873
forms from opening in Design or Layout view, 671
Layout view, 1304
Navigation Pane or built-in Ribbon access in runtime mode, 1328–1329
special keys use, 1312
use of Module and Class Module buttons, 1330
user’s access to window controls, 675
previewing
forms before printing, 557–558
reports
before printing, 124–125
for sample application, 738
table definitions, 199–200
primary key index, 189, 190
primary keys
artificial, 1071–1072
AutoNumber fields as, 549
changing, 248–250
defined, 99
defining
for database tables, 174–175, 181, 182
for projects, 1470–1471
finding in SharePoint list, 1219
foreign keys and, 416
functional dependence of fields on, A21–A23
including in data collection, 310
providing tables with unique identifiers, A20–A21
query update limitations for, 469
setting
for imported spreadsheet data, 278–279
in Table Analyzer Wizard, 237
SharePoint Services and, 1218
troubleshooting duplicate, 512
value changed in parent table, 185
Print Options tab (Page Setup dialog box), 752
Print Preview contextual tab, 739
Print Preview feature, 737–739
Print Preview Zoom button, 124
printer fonts, 649
printers
adjusting default margins automatically, 736
saving specific report settings for, 753
printing
  event properties for, 881
  forms, 518, 557–558
  macro actions for data, A105–A106
  mailing labels
    company and contact, 754
    with data from multiple tables, 463–468
  reports, 750–755
    in landscape or portrait orientation, 751, 752, 755
    previewing first, 124–125, 737–739, 750–751
    from Relationships window, 188
  table definitions, 199–200
privacy
  Microsoft privacy statement, 19
  options for, 38–39
Privacy Options check box (Trust Center dialog box), 38–39
Privacy Options dialog box, 19–20
Private statement, 972–973
procedural statements
  Const, 965
  Dim, 966–969
  DoCmd and RunCommand, 1026–1028
  flow-control
    Call, 1017
    Do...Loop, 1017–1018
    For...Next, 1018–1019
    For Each...Next, 1019–1020
    GoTo, 1020–1021
    If...Then...Else, 1021–1022
    RaiseEvent, 1022–1023
    Select Case, 1023–1024
    Stop, 1024
    While...Wend, 1025
    With...End, 1025–1026
  functions and subroutines
    about, 1005
    Function, 1006–1007
    Sub, 1007–1009
  Option Explicit, 963
  Property Get, 1010–1012
  Property Let, 1012–1014
  Property Set procedure, 1014–1016
  Set, 991–993
procedural vs. object-oriented programming, 560–562
Procedure list (Visual Basic Editor), 946–947
procedures
  class module
    Property Get, 1010–1012
    Property Let, 1012–1014
    Property Set, 1014–1016
  compiling errors with procedures within, 947
  examining call sequence for, 959–960
  stored, 1519–1524
    about SQL, 1493, 1519
    choosing combo box values resolved with, 1564, 1575–1576
    defined, 136
    defining properties for columns, 1523–1524
    displaying in text editors, 1525
    filtering, 1493
    inserting parameters in append values queries, 1520–1522
    naming parameters for, 1517
    server filters unavailable for, 1558
text stored, 1526–1541
  about, 1526–1527
  adding control-of-flow statements, 1531–1535
  comment blocks in, 1528
  declaring variables, 1531–1532
  grouping multiple statements with transactions, 1535–1541
  starting new, 1527–1529
  testing variables in, 1531, 1532
  user-defined stored, 1533
process-driven design, A7
processing e-mail replies
  accepting multiple replies, 314
  allowing multiple rows per reply, 314–315
  automatically in Outlook, 312–313, 325–326
  choosing method for, 331–332
  discarding replies, 314
  manually, 321–322, 341–343
  setting date to stop, 315
processor requirements, 1341
product key for Microsoft Office system, 1342
Products form
  justified format for, 597
  modifying, 598–601
Project Explorer window (VBE)
  about, 946
  illustrated, 945
project files
  concatenating expressions with plus sign, A40
  wildcard characters for string comparisons in, A49
project forms, 1547–1565
  applying server filters, 1558–1561
  changing Default Max Records property, 1555–1557
  differences in, 1547–1554
  fetching recordsets, 1548
  properties for, 1552–1554
  setting
    input parameters, 1561–1565
    options for, 1549–1551
recordset type, 1554–1555
similarities with database forms, 1547
unsupported in Layout view, 1552
project queries, 1491–1545
building in query designer, 1495–1524
adding tables, views, and functions, 1495–1496
gird pane of, 1497, 1500, 1503–1507
Group By options in, 1506
in-line functions, 1513–1519
panes in, 1497–1498
specifying query properties, 1507
SQL pane, 1498
stored procedures, 1519–1524
types of views created in, 1495
using views, 1507–1513
working with columns for, 1499–1450
working in diagram pane, 1497, 1499, 1500–1503
building with text editor, 1524–1545
selecting option for, 1524–1525
text scalar functions, 1541–1543
text stored procedures, 1526–1541
text-table-valued functions, 1543–1545
saving in SQL Server before running, 1510
viewing, 10–11, 1492–1494
project reports, 1567–1577
differences between database and, 1567–1570
input parameters, 1572–1577
server filters in, 1570–1572
setting properties for, 1569–1570
similarities between database and, 1567
unsupported in Layout view, 1552, 1569
projects. See also .adp files
about, 1447
compiling
after completing each code section, 950
errors with procedures within procedure, 947
creating new project file, 1448–1457
building new SQL Server database, 1448–1451
connecting to existing SQL Server database,
1452–1457
errors creating new database, 1452
naming SQL Server databases, 1451
Navigation Pane for new project, 1457
setting up data link properties, 1454–1457
creating table in Design view, 1457–1459
wizards for .accdb applications unavailable, 1457
databases vs., 1450
defining check constraints, 1477–1481
adding, 1478–1480
constructing multiple constraint expressions with,
1481
defined, 1477–1478
expressions to validate dates, 1481
types of constraint expressions, 1481–1482
defining columns, 1459–1470
adding column definitions, 1465–1467
SQL Server column data types, 1461–1464
sql_variant data type, 1463
understanding column properties, 1467–1470
user-defined data types, 1465
defining primary key, 1470–1471
defining relationships for tables, 1482–1488
in Design view, 1482–1485
using database diagrams, 1485–1488
designing forms for, 1547–1565
forms
applying server filters, 1558–1561
changing Default Max Records property, 1555–1557
differences in, 1547–1554
fetching recordsets, 1548
properties for, 1552–1554
setting input parameters, 1561–1565
setting options for, 1549–1551
setting recordset type, 1545–1555
similarities with database forms, 1547
unsupported in Layout view, 1552
improved reliability of Visual Basic, 950
including reference to ADODB or ADOX models in, 987
queries in, 1491–1545
building in query designer, 1495–1524
building with text editor, 1524–1545
types of objects used as, 1493
viewing, 10–11, 1492–1494
working with sample project files, 1494–1495
reports, 1567–1577
differences between database and, 1567–1570
input parameters, 1572–1577
server filters in, 1570–1572
setting properties for, 1569–1570
similarities between database and, 1567
unsupported in Layout view, 1552, 1569
SQL Server version required for, 1448
tables
adding sample, 1475–1477
exploring, 133–135
indexes for, 1471–1475
setting design options for, 1488–1490
upsizing applications to, 533
Proofing category (Access Options dialog box), 92
properties. See also Format property; query properties
Allow Additions, 674, 1554–1555
Allow Deletions, 674, 1554–1555
Allow Edits, 674, 1554–1555
Allow Layout View, 589
properties, continued
Auto Expand, 605
Auto Resize, 622
Can Grow, 1119
Caption, 216, 377, 586, 587
changing field, 232–233
control
   Enabled and Locked, 584–585, 662
   listed on All tab, 666–669
customizing query, 452–463
Cycle, 726, 1080
Default Max Records, 1550, 1555–1557
Default View, 746
defining default template form, 682–683
displaying
   project query view, 1510–1513
subdatasheet, 388
Dockable, 946
effect of Format property on data in underlying table, 654
event
changing data, 871–873
detecting focus changes, 874–875
detecting form and report filtering, 876
detecting PivotTable and PivotChart changes, 870, 878–880
detecting timer expiration, 882
names of, 870
opening and closing forms and reports, 870–871
printing, 881
trapping errors, 882
formatting control, 651–661
Date/Time formats, 657–660
numbers and currency, 652–654
text, 655–656
Yes/No fields, 660
forms, 670–680
   border styles, 675–676
   controlling filtering and modifications, 673–674
defining pop-up or modal, 672–673
displaying, 586–587
listed on All tab, 676–680
preventing user’s access to window controls, 675
project, 1552–1554
restriciting views for users, 670–671
setting navigation options, 671–672
HasModule, 944
Hide Duplicates, 840–841
Input Mask, 1063
Input Parameters, 1574–1575
Link Child Fields, 705, 706
Link Master Fields, 705, 706
linking fields with subform control, 705
Lookup, 240–245
macros referencing
   form and report, 919–920
   form and report control, 920
making grid dots invisible with Grid X and Grid Y, 587
Max Records, 462, 1550, 1555
Min Max Button, 675
modifying Report Wizard control, 787, 788
Multi Select, 1084–1085, 1086
multiple-page forms with Cycle, 726
ODBC Timeout, 462
Page, 832–833
project form, 1552–1554
project report, 1569–1570
Record Lock, 462
Records Selectors, 671
Recordset, 1104
Recordset Type, 1554–1555
report
   about, 822
   list of available, 823–830
   project, 1569–1570
   property sheet for, 819, 822–823
Running Sum, 845–848
section
   list of available, 820–822
   viewing, 819
Server Filter, 1570, 1571
Server Filter By Form, 1559
setting
   field, 161–165, 353–355
   for form objects, 574–578
   input parameter, 1562–1563
   label, 585–586
   for Multi-Value Lookup Field, 247
SharePoint column, 1176, 1177
tab's Page Index, 721
text box, 584–585
Show Date Picker, 1063
sorting number values of Lookup, 381
Source Connect Str, 462
Source Database, 462
specifying query, 1507
SQL Server table column, 1467–1470
Subdatasheet, 178
tab control, 723
Tab Index, 663
Top Values, 453–454
Unique Records, 454–458
Unique Values, 454–458
Validation Rule and Validation Text, 670
viewing those created by Combo Box Wizard, 604–605

Properties dialog box
adding detail to PivotCharts, 480–482
Check Constraints tab, 1478
Hidden check box in, 70, 75
property settings for application shortcut, 1331–1332, 1334

Properties window
Function Parameters tab, 1518, 1519
illustrated, 1511
In-Line Function tab, 1518
options on View tab for, 1512–1513
Stored Procedures tab, 1523–1524
Properties window (Visual Basic Editor), 945, 946
Property Get procedure, 1010–1012
Property Let procedure, 1012–1014
Property Set procedure, 1014–1016

property sheet
All tab
listing of control properties, 666–669
listing of form properties, 676–680
assigning alias to query fields with, 496, 497
illustrated, 575
listed embedded macros in events, 902
opening
and closing in Design view, 576
and customizing, 116–117
replacing field list with, 565
report, 819, 822–823
setting for, 123
resizing controls using, 633
section, 819
setting form’s object properties from, 574–578
tabs on, 575–576

Property Sheet button, 176, 476
Property statement, 947
protocols
TCP/IP, 1137
types of network, 1138

Public statement, 973–974

public variables and constants, 963–964

Publish To Web Server dialog box, 1210, 1221, 1222
publishing data on Web. See also HTML (Hypertext Markup Language)
creating static HTML documents, 1140–1158
customizing appearance, 1143–1148
designing and using HTML templates, 1148–1151
exporting database as HTML file, 1140–1143
generating HTML page from Access report, 1151–1154
development tools required for, 1127–1128
dynamic Web pages, 1158–1161
delivering dynamic query results, 1158–1160
processing live data with HTML forms, 1160
using ASP for fetching data on, 1158
using Visual Studio .NET and ASP.NET, 1160–1161
sharing data with SharePoint Services, 1161–1163
static Web pages
understanding, 1137–1139
viewing, 1139–1140
XML overview, 1135–1137
publishing database to SharePoint site, 1208–1211
about, 1208
.accdb file format required, 1210
downloading SharePoint databases to trusted locations, 1225
moving vs., 1207
publishing changes to migrated database, 1217
republishing after changing database, 1207, 1219–1222
selecting and publishing file, 1210–1211
purchasing digital certificates, 1336

quantified predicate, A54–A55
queries, 347–514. See also action queries; in-line functions; project queries; stored procedures
about, 4, 99
action, 347, A33, A71
adding records in Datasheet view, 391
advantages of, 15–16
aggregate, 1505
append, 502–507
appending data with stored procedures, 1519–1522
command on Design contextual tab for, 488
creating, 503–506
defined, 485
icon for, 490
make-table vs., 502
running, 506–507
SQL overview for, A73–A75
append values
inserting parameters in, 1520–1522
syntax of, 1519–1520
assigning data types for parameters, 451
avoiding joins between, 185
Between, In, and Like comparison operators in, 360–361
building
for complex reports, 812–813
query on, 421–424
report, 757–759
subreport, 855
for table modified in Table Analyzer Wizard, 238–239
to ways to create, 348
queries, continued

checking
field properties in Datasheet view, 354
new field validation rules, 381–382
choosing data from single table, 349–351
complex expressions for simple, 371–376
controlling output of, 452–454
criteria
dates and times in, 356–357
entering selection, 355–356
excluding requests by date, 1109
for fields in, 355–356
selecting with AND and OR, 357–360
specifying sorting, 380
crosstab, 442–449
creating, 442–447
Design view of, 442, 443
displaying multiple-value fields in, 444
filling empty cells with zero values, 446–447
function of, 442
GROUP BY clauses in, A44–A45
partitioning data in, 447–449
pivoting with PivotTable vs., 444, 469–470
Query Wizard for creating, 431
sample results desired from, 442, 443
sort order for columns in, 445–446
specifying column headings for, 445–446
unable to change data in, 468
viewing design in Datasheet view, 445
customizing properties, 452–463
data definition, 463
data selection and editing in Datasheet view, 393
defined in SQL, 417
delete, 510–511
about, 485
backing up before running, 510
command on Design contextual tab for, 488
confirming actions of, 510
deleting inactive data with, 510–511
icon for, 490
testing rows affected by, 507–510
using, 510
delivering dynamic results on Web page, 1158–1160
designating as source for embedded subform, 706–707
designing
custom query by form, 1086–1093
PivotChart form, 731–732, 860–861
ensuring data integrity in, 417–419
exporting XML, 1246–1250
expressions in, 362–370
field names in, 377–378
field property assignments in, 353–355
finding
records across date spans, 428
unmatched outer joins, 426–430
functions in, 136–137
including parameters in, 449–452
limitations updating fields in, 468–469
limiting returned records, 410
listing by object type, 110–111
looking up values with combo box, 602–604
macro actions executing, A106–A107
make-table, 495–502
append vs., 502
assigning alias to field lists in, 496, 497
command on Design contextual tab for, 488
converting from select query, 500
creating, 496–500
defined, 485
icon for, 490
limitations of, 501
running, 500–502
SELECT...INTO statements as, A75–A76
verifying data in, 496
many-to-one, 687–688
modifying, 212
opening in Design view, 112–113, 349, 351
outer joins for, 425–426
Output All Fields property, 452–453
parameter, 1565
pass-through, 463
placing all fields in many-to-one form, 688–691
preventing data modification of, 413
processing data with, 10–11
project, 1491–1545
building in query designer, 1495–1524
building with text editor, 1524–1545
viewing, 10–11, 1492–1494
record indicators in Datasheet view, 390
relationships
matching unnecessary for joined, 416
to other Access objects, 101
to tables and forms, 560
viewing those defined for, 187
restricting user datasheet, 179
returning unique records and values for, 454–458
row source, 1054–1055
saving complex results in temporary table, 496
select, 347
selecting
report fields from multiple, 778
table containing e-mail address, 332–333
setting
datasheet format for in Datasheet view, 1145
field properties for, 353–355
sorting recordsets by fields, 421
specifying
data source for embedded subforms, 693–696
fields in, 351–353
subdatasheets in, 387–390
testing new table validation rules, 382–384
totals, 435–449
defining aggregate functions in, 435–436, 437
filtering before grouping records with, 440–441
filtering groups of totals after calculating, 441–442
partitioning data in, 447
sorting sequence of, 439
unable to change data in, 468
uses for, 435
union, 463–468
building in SQL view, 463–468
illustrated, 468
updates disallowed for, 469
using column names in ORDER BY clause of, A52, A63, A69
viewing in Datasheet view, 465
update, 486–495
backing up data before using, 489
command on Design contextual tab for, 488
confirmation dialog boxes with, 489, 491
converting select query to, 488
defined, 485
defining generic parameters for, 495
expressions in, 489
icon for, 490
illustrated, 488
multiple tables or queries creating, 493–495
running, 489–491
updating multiple fields, 491–493
using select query to test data updates, 486–487
working
in Datasheet view, 113–114, 384–412
with recordset data, 560
Queries object type, 48
Query Builder, 576–578
Query Design button, 348, 415
query designer, 1495–1424. See also complex queries; simple queries
about SQL, built in, 463
adding tables, views, and functions, 1495–1496
Boolean operators in, A55
building
database and project queries in, 1491
simple queries with, 348
SQL statements from text editor, 1525–1526

defining Lookup properties for desktop database queries, 353
editing SQL statements in, 1526
ensuring correct table used in, 415
Group By options in, 1506
in-line functions, 1513–1519
available properties for, 1517–1519
building, 1514–1516
constructing to create updatable recordsets, 1514
declaring parameter to filter, 1515, 1516
defined, 1493
reasons for using, 1513
testing, 1516–1517
joins
adding lines when building query on query, 423
working with, 419
opening, 348
panes of
about, 1497–1498
diagram, 1497, 1499, 1500–1503
grid, 1497, 1500, 1503–1507
SQL, 1498
queries converted into SQL by, 417
reviewing query in SQL view, 464
specifying brackets around field names for database queries, 362
stored procedures, 1519–1524
about SQL, 1493, 1519
defining properties for columns, 1523–1524
inserting parameters in append values queries, 1520–1522
re-creating stored procedure from, 1529–1530
using append and append values queries, 1519
views
types created in, 1495
using, 1507–1513
working with columns for, 1499–1450
query parameters
assigning data types for, 451
brackets around, 449
defining generically for update queries, 495
deleting rows by date, 451
formats for date parameters, 508
including in queries, 449–452
Query Parameters dialog box, 451
query properties, 452–463
cycling through values of, 461
Max Records, 462
ODBC Timeout, 462
Output All Fields, 452–453
predefining subdatasheets with, 458–462
Record Lock, 462
query properties, continued
Source Connect Str, 462
Source Database, 462
Subdatasheet Height, 460
Top Values, 453–454
Unique Records, 454–458
Unique Values, 454–458, 469
viewing in Query window, 452, 453
Query Type group (Design contextual tab), 488, 509
Query window
  changing font size for, 467
  Design view for, 351
  opening query property sheet in, 452, 453
Query Wizard
  building crosstab queries from, 431
  creating complex queries in, 431–434
  Find Unmatched, 432–434
  selecting, 432
Query Wizard button, 348, 1524
QueryDefs collection, 984
question mark (?) wildcard, 169, A49
Quick Access Toolbar, 27–33
  adding
    command from Ribbon to, 34
    macros to, 30–31
    separators between commands, 33
  Customize category settings for, 28–29, 94
  Database Tools tab, 24, 44–45
  default and custom commands on, 27–30
  illustrated, 28
  removing items from, 28–29, 33, 34
  restoring default settings for, 33
  revising order of commands and macros on, 32
  undo feature for, 210
quick create commands
  forms
    building with wizard or commands, 593
    creating data entry form, 590–591
    creating split form, 590–591
    Report, 775–777
  quick create table templates, 152
  Quit method, 1328

R
RaiseEvent statement, 1022–1023
randomly loading data, 1030–1044
  building procedure to, 1030–1032
  code listing, 1032–1040
  explanation of code listing, 1041–1044
rbtnCSD ribbon code listing, 1292–1296
RDBMS (relational database management system)
  Access as, 6–13
  data manipulation in, 9–11
  data sharing and control in, 12–13
  database capabilities of, 5–6
  defined, 4
  sequence of fields in databases, 217
read permissions, 273
read-only database, 1224
read-only forms, 1554–1555
Ready To Install page (Microsoft SQL Server Installation Wizard), 1335–1336
recipients
  customizing data collection messages for, 318–319, 334–335
  filling out HTML forms, 322–325
  inserting data in InfoPath forms, 337–341
  instructing to click Reply, 319
  selecting e-mail, 316–318, 322–321
Reconnect function, 1323
record indicators in Datasheet view, 390
Record Lock property, 462
record locking settings, 294, 295
Record Number box, 385
record sources
  binding to table, 609–610
  building multiple-table query to serve as, 686–688
  choosing query used as report’s, 1572
  creating query on form property’s, 576–578
  defined, 566
  in-line functions as report, 1513
  query views as, 1507
  selecting report’s, 791–792
  specifying, 566–567
  subquery providing search criteria from underlying, 1093
  using field in calculations from specified report, 834
records
  about, 99
  action query errors with locked, 512
  adding
    in forms, 543–548
    totals to report, 804–807
  design concept of, A17
  form properties controlling addition of, 673–674
  keyboard shortcuts for, 542–543
  linking between forms and subforms, 548
  locking those retrieved in queries, 462
  project rows vs., 1458
  querying across date spans, 428
  receiving new data via e-mail, 309, 329
  size limitations for, 201
  verifying prerequisite before saving, 1075–1077
Records Selectors property, 671–672
Recordset object variable, 994–997
Recordset property, 1104
Recordset Type property, 1554–1555
RecordSetObject.Open parameter settings, 1002–1003
recordsets
adding records at end of edited, 544–545
ADO, 1001–1005
deleting rows in, 1004
difficulties using, 982
inserting rows in, 1005
moving to specific records, 1003
opening, 1001
RecordSetObject.Open parameter settings, 1002–1003
searching and finding rows in, 1003–1004
changing field names for, 377–378
choosing type of project query for updatable, 1514
conserving server resources when downloading, 1551
DAO, 994–997
defined, 347, 560, 686
dynaset and table, 996
fetching partial sets for project report, 1568
filling empty cells with zero values, 446–447
filtering before grouping with totals queries, 440–441
finding unmatched records, 426–430, 432–434
inserting row in, 997
limiting returned records for queries, 410
locating rows in form, 1104
methods of fetching project form, 1548
navigation buttons in Datasheet view, 386
organizing with query designer views, 1507
relative record number of, 384
removing with delete queries, 507–511
returning unique records and values for queries, 454–458
sorting rows in, 378–380, 421
specifying fields for, 351–353
using server filters for, 1558
using updatable, 1554–1555
viewing joined data from two tables, 417–419
recovering deleted macros, 907
Rectangle tool, 642
rectangles, 644–645
Recycle Bin, 1179–1182, 1197
ReDim statement, 974–975
referencing
collections, 987–989, 991
controls for forms and reports, 920
methods, in variables created by macro, 991
objects
form and report objects, 919
in variables created by macro, 991
within collections, 987–988
properties, 987–989
form and report, 919–920
in variables created by macro, 991
subforms and subreports, 920–921
temporary variables, 991
referential integrity
defining relationships for project tables, 1482–1488
enforcing in relationships, 184, 185
ensuring business rules in queries for, 417–419
maintaining application’s data integrity, 413
not enforced by SharePoint Services, 1195
presetting field values to ensure data integrity, 935–938
testing code for related records when deleting record, 1074–1075
refining application design, A6
Refresh Pivot button, 476
Registration Information page (Microsoft SQL Server Installation Wizard), 1352–1353
relation, 5
relational database management system. See RDBMS
(relational database management system)
relational databases, 4–5
relationships
among database tasks, A13
efficiency in database, A27–A28
creating linking tables, A28
foreign keys, A27
one-to-many and one-to-one, A28
many-to-many
about, 5
defining linking table to create, 1077–1078
embedding subforms to reflect, 693
order-entry examples demonstrating, A8
one-to-many
database efficiency and, A28
defining, 185–186
linking table fields for, 184
between tables, 181–188
avoiding outer joins between two tables, 185
creating relationship on multiple fields, 186–187
defining fields linking tables, 181–183
defining for project tables, 1482–1488
deleting, 210
editing from Design contextual tab, 184
setting up first relationship, 183–184
testing code for related records when deleting record, 1074–1075
undoing deleted, 211
viewing, 187
Relationships tab (Properties dialog box), 1483–1485
Relationships window

database diagrams vs., 1485
embedding subforms to reflect many-to-many relationships, 693
illustrated, 187
opening tables in Design view in, 188
printing reports from, 188
relative record number, 384
Relink Lists To New Site dialog box, 1197
relinking tables when going back online, 1232–1233
Remove button, 633

removing
automatic sorting of Navigation Pane objects, 78
control layouts, 800
database passwords, 1335
form control layouts, 598–599, 632–635, 640–642
form grid dots, 564–565
items from Quick Access Toolbar, 28–29, 33, 34
joins for project query tables, 1501
temporary variables, 909–910, 991
trusted publishers, 37

renaming
field names in queries, 419
navigation groups, 59, 60
object shortcuts, 70–72
objects with macro action, A116
tables, 211–212
template fields, 154
replacing data in Datasheet view, 394
replies. See processing e-mail replies
Report command, 775–777
Report Design button, 759–760
Report Design Tools collection, 759, 761
Report Design Tools contextual tab, 121–122, 761
report footers. See footers
report modules
breakpoints ineffective if not open in Visual Basic Editor, 957
module objects vs., 944

report properties
about, 822
list of available, 823–830
property sheet for, 819, 822–823
rules for referencing, 919–920

report sections. See section properties
Report view, 745–750
about, 127–128, 745–746
defining Default View property to open reports in, 746
filtering data in, 747–748

properties
for detecting filters applied to reports, 876
for trapped keyboard and mouse events, 876–878
responding to control events in, 749–750

Report window
designing report in, 759–761
Layout view for, 125–127
Print Preview for, 124–125
Report view for, 127–128

Report Wizard, 777–790
about, 777
adding
date and time to reports in, 830–831
grouping levels and intervals, 779–780
report title, 782–783
choosing fields from multiple tables or queries, 778
creating structure for complex reports in, 813–815
illustrated, 778, 779
layout style and page orientation, 781–782
modifying reports from, 784–790
accenting detail with background color, 788–789
changing control properties, 787, 788
resizing columns and fields, 784–785
resizing and repositioning controls, 785–787
previewing report in, 783–784
selecting fields, 778
specifying sorting criteria, 780, 781
summary options for, 780–781
verifying grouping criteria, 779

ReportML style specification, 1250, 1252

reports
about, 120–121
Access architecture and, 980
advanced design, 811–863
adding PivotChart to report, 860–863
adding print date and page numbers, 830–833
adding values across group, 837–838
calculating percentages, 840, 843–844
calculating totals on expressions, 838
concatenating text strings, 841–842
conditional formatting, 848–851
creating and embedding subreport, 741–744, 851–859
creating grand total, 839–840
defining grouping and sorting criteria, 816–818
hindering redundant values, 840–841, 842
numbering report lines, 845–848
performing calculations on detail line, 833–837
queries for complex reports, 812–813
report properties, 822–830
section properties, 819–822
structuring basics in Report Wizard, 813–815
automating, 1114–1124
drawing border on report, 1118–1121
dynamically filtering on opening, 1121–1124
using up partial page of mailing labels, 1115–1118
blank, 760
building from scratch
  adding column labels, 770–771
  adding new grouping level on grid, 764
  changing grouping and sorting priorities, 768–769
  choosing to use or omit headers, 767
  data types unavailable in Group, Sort, And Total pane, 763
defining groupings, 761, 762–763
designing, 759–760
entering titles, 766–767
formatting title for, 769
group interval options, 765–766
grouping specifications and data types, 765
line control in, 771, 773
opening Group, Sort, And Total pane for, 761–762
page numbers for, 773–774
printing options, 768
selecting totals options in, 766
sizing text box controls for, 772–773
sort order and options in, 764–765
using or omitting footers, 767–768
building query for, 757–759
canceling changes in, 740
changing definition in Design view, 121–124
creating snapshot data for, A31
customizing width and height, 753–754
defined, 100
Detail section of
  embedding PivotChart in, 861–863
  expression values used with conditional formatting, 849
  illustrated, 740
  numbering lines in, 846–848
  performing calculations on, 834–837
events
detecting applied filters, 876
opening and closing, 870–871
trapped keyboard and mouse, 876–878
exporting XML, 1250–1254
filtering to link to, 1099–1101
generating HTML Web page from, 1151–1154
  creating template for report, 1151–1152
  headers, footers, and groups in, 739–741
  interactive Report view for, 127–128, 745–750
Layout view, 790–809
  adding totals to records, 804–807
  applying AutoFormat, 807–809
  grouping and sorting in, 792–796
  modifying Report Wizard reports in, 784–790
  selecting record source, 791–792
starting with blank report, 790–792
usefulness of, 797
working with control layouts, 797–804
look of printed sample, 736
modifying, 212
objects embedded in, 744–745
opening
  from Navigation Pane, 736, 737
  in Report view or Print Preview, 746
printing, 750–755
  adjusting Page Setup options, 751–755
  previewing before, 124–125, 738, 750–751
project, 1567–1577
differences between database and, 1567–1570
input parameters, 1572–1577
server filters in, 1570–1572
setting properties for, 1569–1570
similarities between database and, 1567
unsupported in Layout view, 1552, 1569
property sheets for, 123, 819
quick, 775–777
reducing redundancy in, 833
relationship to other Access objects, 100–101
Report Wizard, 777–790
  adding date and time, 830–831
  adding grouping levels and intervals, 779–780
  adding report title, 782–783
  choosing fields from multiple tables or queries, 778
  illustrated, 778, 779
  layout style and page orientation, 781–782
modifying reports from, 784–790
previewing report in, 783–784
selecting fields, 778
sorting criteria, 780, 781
summary options for, 780–781
verifying grouping criteria, 779
subreports, 741–744
using, 735–736
viewing
  in Layout view, 125–127
  in Print Preview, 736, 737–739
Visual Basic report modules, 944
Reports collections. See also reports
  referencing objects in, 987–988
Reports object type, 48
republishing shared databases after changing, 1207, 1219–1222
Require Variable Declaration check box (Options dialog box), 963
Required field property messages, 168
resending data collection messages, 343–345
resizing controls
in Layout view, 631–632
using property sheet, 633
Report Wizard columns and fields in Layout view, 784–785, 786
Report Wizard controls and repositioning, 785–787
text box controls in Layout view, 797–798
Resolve Conflicts dialog box, 1231–1232
resolving changes in shared data, 1231
Resources category (Access Options dialog box), 96–97
restoring
defaults for Quick Access Toolbar, 33
Hourglass after running macros, 897
Recycle Bin items, 1179–1182
Ribbon, 45
rows replaced in error, 224
Retry All My Changes button, 1232
RETURN statements, 1529, 1531
return values for MsgBox function, 933
reverse order sorting, 403
reversing changes to table design, 234
reviewing application design, A6
Ribbon, 41–45. See also Design contextual tab; External Data tab
adding command to Quick Access Toolbar from, 34
collapsing, 45
contextual tabs
about, 41
adding built-in groups to, 1276–1279
creating custom, 1274–1275
found on Form Design Tools, 567
Print Preview, 739
Report Design Tools, 121–122, 761
setting focus to, 1301–1302
Controls group
border formatting with, 583–584
buttons on, 568–572, 645–646
illustrated, 568–572, 761
Option Button command, 714
placing bound controls on form from field list, 573–574
customizing, 1266–1279, 1283–1302
adding built-in groups to tabs, 1276–1279
building well-formed XML for, 1270–1271
creating U/SysRibbons table, 1266–1269
creating VBA callbacks, 1296–1297
disabling unused tabs, buttons, and groups, 1283–1284
displaying errors, 1274
dynamically updating elements, 1297–1299
hiding existing elements, 1271–1272
hiding options on Microsoft Office Button, 1300–1301
loading images into custom controls, 1299–1300
loading into Access data projects, 1286
loading XML for, 1284–1287
setting focus to tab, 1301–1302
tabs, 1274–1275
testing, 1270, 1272–1273
using RibbonX attributes, 1287–1296
XML code listing for, 1292–1296
getting accustomed to, 21
illustrated, 24, 41
main tabs, 41
Create, 24, 42–43
Database Tools, 24, 44–45
displaying ScreenTips for, 104
External Data, 24, 43–44
Home, 24, 42
not used in Visual Basic Editor, 945
PivotTable tools on, 475–476
quick create commands on, 590
sort buttons in Datasheet view, 402
unable to select from when modal form displayed, 673
used with sample reports, 811
Rich Text fields, 324
Rich Text Format support for SharePoint text fields, 1170–1171
right arrow button (→), 593
Right Arrow key, 392
right joins, 1502
RIGHT [OUTER] JOIN statement, A42
ROLLBACK TRANSACTION statements, 1535
Row Fields drop zone, 474
row selector, 385
row source queries, 1054–1055
@@ROWCOUNT system variable, 1531, 1532, 1534, 1535
rows
about, 90
adding to project query views, 1510
appending with INSERT statement, A73–A75
copying and pasting multiple, 224
counting with stored procedures, 1524
Datasheet view of, 385
deleting
datasheet, 396
and updating ADO recordset, 1004
entering data in table, 150
extra table, 111
filtering in Filter window, 408–410
finding differences in, 369–370
inserting, 220–222
in ADO recordset, 1005
on InfoPath forms, 338
new index, 190
limiting returned records for queries, 410, 462
locating rows in form recordset, 1104
moving with mouse, 218
multiple rows per e-mail replies, 314–315
project, 1458
queries for deleting, 485, 507–511
searching for in ADO recordset, 1003–1004
selecting
for copying or cutting, 395
to view property settings, 107–108
sorting
changing sequence by cutting or, 396
in recordsets, 378–380
updating with query, 486–495
ruler, 633
rules. See also validation rules
breaking design, A28–A31
capturing point-in-time data, A29–A31
creating report snapshot data, A31
improving performance of critical tasks, A29
business
ensuring in queries for data integrity, 417–419
verifying prerequisite data to satisfy, 1075–1077
SQL Server Rules for Identifiers, 1460
table design, A27
Run All From My Computer option (Microsoft Office dialog box), 1344
RunCommand method, 1027
RunMacro command, 939
Running Sum property, 845–848
runtime mode execution, 1328–1329
S
sample files
location of, 23, 103
modifying table design for, 204
working with project files, 1494–1495
sample reports
look of printed, 736
previewing, 738
SampleMacro macro object, 129
Save As dialog box, 151, 893–894
Save button, 151
saving
changes to databases, 205
complex query results in temporary table, 496
database diagrams, 1488
embedded macros with form or report control, 904
filters, 412
import steps for Get External Data - SharePoint Site wizard, 1189–1190
macros, 893–894
new or retaining old data for subdatasheets, 389
objects with macro action, A116
project queries in SQL Server before running, 1510
specific printer settings for reports, 753
tables, 151
template files in appropriate folders, 197–199
scalar functions
defined, 1493
including in parentheses, 1542
table-valued functions vs., 1544
text table-valued vs., 1543
schema documents (.xsd)
about, 1237, 1239–1241
importing into Access, 1255
Schema tab (Export XML dialog box), 1247, 1248, 1249
scientific notation, 654
scope of variables and constants, 963–964
screen fonts, 649
Screen object of Access Application object, 979, 980
screen resolution
effect on alignment commands, 611
Print Preview display and, 737
ScreenTips
displaying, 104
hyperlink, 397, 398, 547
viewing filter icons with, 408
scripts
about, 1128
ASP script generated in VBScript, 1158
browsers executing on client computers, 1138
scroll bars
combo box, 244
form, 661
Scroll Bars property, 671–672
scrolling through Ribbon tabs, 41
SDI. See single-document interface (SDI)
Search Bar
filtering objects with, 79–80
finding database objects from, 78–82
Search box, 533–534
Search Fields As Formatted check box (Find And Replace dialog box), 552, 553
Search-Condition clause, A55–A57
searching
ADO recordset for rows, 1003–1004
data
with Find and Replace, 405–406
with macro actions, A111
searching, data, *continued*

using wildcards, 406
database objects, 78–82
forms, 551–554
maximizing search for all objects, 82
for states, 410–411
secondary forms
opening with macro, 921–924
synchronizing with macro, 924–928
section properties. See also Detail section
list of available, 820–822
property sheet for, 819
viewing, 819
security. See also trusted locations
allowing blocked content in browsers, 1245
blocking harmful content, 35–36
database encryption and, 1336
digital certificates
packaging signed database with, 1337
purchasing, 1336
self-signing, 1337
digital signatures
about files with, 1336
omitted from sample databases, 35
responding to security notice about, 1338–1339
signing .acdb files, 1338
improving SQL Server 2005, 1356
linked data, 293
Message Bar alerts for, 35
SQL Server connections
establishing, 1450–1451
using Windows NT Integrated Security, 1455
Trust Center, 34–35
SELECT...INTO statement (make-table query), A75–A76
Select Case statement, 1023–1024
Select Certificate dialog box, 1337
SELECT clause, 464
Select Data Source dialog box, 267–268
Select Field box (Group, Sort, And Total pane), 763
select queries
action queries distinguished from, 490
converting
fields discarded while, 490
to make-table query, 500
to update query, 488
defined, 347
testing
data updates with, 486–487
rows affected by delete query with, 507–510
text table-valued functions and, 1543
update limitations for fields in, 468–469
verifying data for make-table queries with, 496

Select SQL Server Database File dialog box, 1455
SELECT statements
about, A33, A34
assigning variables with, 1531
DISTINCTROW clauses in, A34, A58–A59, A65
order of major clauses in, A33
overview of, A57–A63
syntax variants for, A34
Selected Fields list, copying fields to, 593
selecting
data, 1082–1097
by filtering, 407–408
choosing all controls in control layout, 639
filtering one list with another, 1095–1097
multiple fields, 579
multiple-selection list boxes, 1082–1086
noncontiguous, 579, 1082–1086
to perform tasks, A11
providing custom query by form, 1086–1093
selecting all controls in area, 588, 600
from summary list, 1094–1095
fields, 578
all in list, 578
all in table, 352, 353
in Form Wizard, 593–594
multiple, 579
as report group, 762–763
in Report Wizard, 778
as source for stored e-mail address, 315–316
selection criteria
avoiding keywords as, 356
Boolean operators as, 356
building date/time, 356–357
common mistakes using compound, 359
entering for queries, 355–356
excluding query requests by date, 1109
self-signing certificates, 1337
SendKeys macro actions, A110
<Separator> option, 33
Server Filter By Form property, 1559
Server Filter property, 1570, 1571
server filters, 1538–1561
about, 1558
description of report, 1570–1572
getting help constructing, 1559
input parameters vs., 572, 1572
network traffic with, 1572
using
in embedded subforms and subreports, 1577
project report, 1570
separate queries with filters vs., 1563
servers
attaching/detaching project files to local, 1494–1495
choosing server connections, 1450–1451, 1454
conserving resources when downloading recordsets, 1551
embedded subform and subreport design for efficiency, 1577
errors connecting to SQL Server, 1452
server-side data-only files
designing data fetching for, 1321
setting up applications with, 1319, 1320
splitting tables to create, 1320–1323
Service Packs
Access bug fixes
error message when saving in-line function, 1516
incorrect positioning of fields on form grid, 627
module: protocol prefix, 1062
missing background images in Form Wizard, 595, 690
opening properties affecting color from Custom Properties dialog box, 729
operating system-required, 1341
Set Control Defaults button, 680–681
Set Database Password dialog box, 1335
Set Hyperlink ScreenTip dialog box, 547
Set Maximum Record Count button, 1548, 1549, 1568
Set Maximum Record Count dialog box, 1549
SET NOCOUNT ON statement, 1528, 1529
SET statements (SQL), 1532
SET statements (Visual Basic), 991–993
Set Unique Identifier button (Table Analyzer Wizard), 237
Setup Progress page (Microsoft SQL Server Installation Wizard), 1356–1357
SharePoint List button, 1183, 1184, 1187, 1203, 1204
SharePoint Services. See Windows SharePoint Services (version 3)
SharePoint List group (Access), 1206
sharing data. See also publishing data on Web; publishing database to SharePoint site
Access for, 12–13
using databases for, 16
Shift key, 643
shortcut menus
accessing table’s commands from, 106–107
displaying single Navigation Pane categories with, 81
Shortcut tab (Properties dialog box), 1331, 1332
shortcuts. See also keyboard shortcuts
application, 1331–1334
adding parameters to target file name, 1332
command-line options for, 1333–1334
properties for, 1331–1332, 1334
object
creating and grouping, 63–67
hiding and renaming, 69–72
renaming, 70–72
revealing hidden, 72–75
Show Add-In User Interface Errors check box (Access Options dialog box), 1274
Show As button, 476
Show Date Picker property, 1063
Show Details button, 476
Show System Objects check box (Navigation Options dialog box), 1267, 1269
Show Table dialog box, 183, 350
Show Top/Bottom button, 475
showing. See displaying
Shutter Bar Open/Close button, 47
simple input form, 578–589
customizing colors and reviewing design, 587–589
dragging multiple fields to, 578–580
font options for, 582–583
label properties for, 585–586
moving and sizing controls, 580–581
setting and displaying properties of, 586–587
text box properties for, 584–585
simple queries, 347–412
adding records in Datasheet view, 391
assigning field properties, 353–355
Between, In, and Like comparison operators in, 360–361
building complex expressions for, 371–376
criteria selection with AND and OR, 357–360
data selection
and editing in Datasheet view, 393
from single table, 349–351
dates and times in selection criteria, 356–357
entering selection criteria, 355–356
expressions in, 362–370
field names in, 377–378
limiting returned records, 410
methods of building, 348
record indicators in Datasheet view, 390
specifying
fields, 351–353
sorting criteria, 380
subdatasheets in, 387–390
validation rules
checking new field, 381–382
testing new table, 382–384
working in Datasheet view, 384–412
simple reports
  adding new grouping level on grid, 764
  changing grouping and sorting priorities, 768–769
  choosing to use or omit headers, 767
  column labels for, 770–771
  data types unavailable in Group, Sort, And Total pane, 763
  defining groupings, 761, 762–763
  designing, 759–760
  group interval options, 765–766
  line control in, 771, 773
  opening Group, Sort, And Total pane for, 761–762
  page numbers for, 773–774
  printing options, 768
  selecting totals options in, 766
  sizing text box controls for, 772–773
  sort order and options in, 764–765
  titles
    entering, 766–767
    formatting, 769
  using or omitting footers, 767–768
simplifying data input, 601–607
  toggle buttons, check boxes, and option buttons, 605–607
  using combo and list boxes, 601–605
single quotation marks (""), 362
single stepping through macros
  disabling, 895
  enabling, 894
  limited debugging with, 951
single-document interface (SDI), 83–86
  about, 84
  defined, 83
single-field indexes, 188–189
Size To Fit command
  limitations of, 614
  sizing controls with, 612–616
sizing
  combo box columns, 603
  controls and moving, 580–581
  controls to fit form content, 612–616
  Form window to fit form with Auto Resize property, 622
  individual controls to fit content, 613
  subform controls, 704
  text box controls for reports, 772–773
smart tags
  adding to controls, 663–665
  defined, 663
  turning off warning, 771
Smart Tags dialog box, 665
Smart Tags field property, 165
SMTP/POP3 service, 1341
Snap To Grid (Control Layout group), 617–620
preparing for import to Access, 274–275
reasons to convert to Access from, 15–17
selecting fields to index and primary key, 278–279
SQL (Structured Query Language). See also SQL Server 2005, Transact-SQL
about, 10
action queries
about, A33, A71
DELETE statement, A72–A73
INSERT statement, A73–A75
SELECT...INTO statement, A75–A76
basic clauses in, 464
brackets or parentheses added by Access, A34
commands used in data definition queries, 463
learning to write in SQL pane, 1498
linking tables to Access databases, 301–302
name separators in, 373
no modifications by ACE to, A61
ODBC standards for, 253–254
queries converted into, 417
query designer’s use of, 463
SELECT queries, A34–A71
aggregate functions in, A35
BETWEEN predicate, A35
Column-Name clause, A35–A37
comparison predicate, A37–A38
DISTINCTROW clauses in, A34, A58–A59, A65
EXISTS predicate, A38–A39
Expression clause, A39–A41
FROM clause, A41–A44
GROUP BY clause, A46, 1506, A44, A65–A66
HAVING clause, A45
IN clause, A34, A46–A47
IN predicate, A47–A48
LIKE predicate, A48–A49
NULL predicate, A50
ORDER BY clause, 1510, 1511, A50–A52, A62, A63, A69
PARAMETERS declaration, A52–A54
quantified predicate, A54–A55
Search-Condition clause, A55–A57
SELECT statement, A57–A63
subquery clause, A64–A67
syntax variants for, A34
TRANSFORM statement, A67–A68
UNION query operator, A68–A70
stored procedures, 1519–1524, 1526–1541
about, 1493, 1519
defined, 136
displaying in text editors, 1525
filtering, 1493
naming parameters for, 1517
using append and append values queries, 1519
TOP n PERCENT clause, 1510, 1511
underlying Access database commands, A33
SQL action queries
about, A33, A71
DELETE statement, A72–A73
INSERT statement (append query), A73–A75
SELECT...INTO statement (make-table query), A75–A76
UPDATE statement, A77–A78
SQL designer, 1530
SQL pane (query designer), 1498
SQL SELECT queries, A34–A71
about, A33
aggregate functions in, A35
BETWEEN predicate, A35
Column-Name clause, A35–A37
comparison predicate, A37–A38
EXISTS predicate, A38–A39
Expression clause, A39–A41
FROM clause, A41–A44
GROUP BY clause
overview of, A44–A45
selecting Group By options in query designer, 1506
uses of, 464, A65–A66
HAVING clause, A45
IN clause, A34, A46–A47
IN predicate, A47–A48
LIKE predicate, A48–A49
NULL predicate, A50
ORDER BY clause
overview, A50–A52
specifying calculated column alias name with, A62
TOP n PERCENT clause and, 1510, 1511
using column names of clause in UNION queries, A52, A63, A69
order of major clauses in, A33
PARAMETERS declaration, A52–A54
quantified predicate, A54–A55
Search-Condition clause, A55–A57
SELECT statement, A57–A63
subquery clause, A64–A67
syntax variants for, A34
TRANSFORM statement, A67–A68
UNION query operator, A68–A70
WHERE clause, A70–A71
SQL Server 7.0 column properties not visible, 1470
SQL Server 2005. See also Microsoft SQL Server
Installation Wizard; SQL Server 2005 Express Edition
access to Create authority in, 113
adding project indexes, 1471–1475
checking Allow Nulls property first, 1482
standard modules
  defined, 943
Private statement in, 972–973
Public statement in, 973–974
starting and running applications, 1310–1316
  intercepting Ctrl+F4 with AutoKeys macro, 1315–1316
  loading USysRibbons table at startup, 1267–1268
  setting database startup properties, 1310–1312
    AutoExec macro for starting applications, 1310, 1312
    hiding Navigation Pane on application startup, 1311
    starting and stopping application, 1312–1315
    startup from application shortcuts, 1331–1334
    verifying and correcting linked table connections,
    1323–1328
states
  abbreviations as selection criteria, 356
  searching for with Filter By Form, 410–411
static HTML documents, 1140–1158
  customizing appearance of Datasheet view for,
  1143–1148
  designing and using HTML templates, 1148–1151
  exporting database as HTML file, 1140–1143
Static statement, 975–976
static Web pages
  understanding, 1137–1139
  viewing, 1139–1140
status bar, 25, 1311
StDev function, 437
Stop All Macros button, 913
Stop Refresh button, 1548, 1568
Stop statement, 1024
StopAllMacros action, 932, 933
stored parameters, 1561–1565
stored procedures, 1519–1524
  about SQL, 1493, 1519
  choosing combo box values resolved with, 1564,
  1575–1576
  defined, 136
  defining properties for columns, 1523–1524
  displaying in text editors, 1525
  filtering, 1493
  inserting parameters in append values queries,
  1520–1522
  naming parameters for, 1517
  server filters unavailable for, 1558
text, 1526–1541
  about, 1526–1527
  adding control-of-flow statements, 1531–1535
  comment blocks in, 1528
  grouping multiple statements with transactions,
  1535–1541
  starting new, 1527–1529

SQL Server 2005, continued
  column data types, 1461–1464
  creating
    data source to, 256–258
    user-defined data types, 1465
  databases
    building new, 1448–1451
    connecting to existing, 1452–1457
    errors creating, 1452, 1457
    editing Access database tables in, 134–135
    importing data from, 266–270
    linking tables to Access databases, 301–302
  names
    databases vs. project files, 1450
    embedded spaces in, 159, 216
    ODBC Driver Manager and, 254
    queries supported in, 1525
    Rules for Identifiers, 1460
    running Access databases in, 137, 138
    saving project queries before running, 1510
    selecting data types in, 1459
    starting Configuration Manager, 266–267
    storing attachment fields as OLE Object data types, 533
    table column properties, 1467–1470
    Transact-SQL, 1525
    up sizing Multi-Value Lookup Fields unavailable for, 248
    version compatibility with projects, 1448
SQL Server 2005 Express Edition. See also Microsoft SQL
  Server Installation Wizard
    authenticating with Windows Vista, 258
    Create Database permissions, 1452
    disk space required for, 1341
    downloading, 133, 1350, 1494
    installing, 1349–1358, 1494
    licensing agreements for, 1350
    Service Pack 2 for, 258
SQL Server Books Online, 1460, 1533
SQL Server Configuration Manager, 266–267, 1357–1358
SQL statements
  declaring, assigning values to, and testing variables,
  1531–1532
  defining block with BEGIN/END, 1531, 1532
  using in text stored procedures, 1526
SQL view, 463–468
SQL-to-Access data type conversions, 270
sql_variant data type, 1465
Stacked button, 635–636
stacked control layouts
  converting, 798–800, 801
  defined, 626, 797
  removing, 632–635, 800
  selecting controls into, 635–638
user-defined, 1533
using append and append values queries, 1519
Stored Procedures tab (Properties window), 1523–1524
Stretch Across Top anchoring option, 624, 625
string constants, 362
string functions, A89–A90
strings
comparing
case insensitivity of, 170
wildcard characters for, A49
concatenating
with & character, 362
text, 841–842
string constants, enclosing text in double or single quotation marks for, 362
string functions, A89–A90
zero-length, 166
Structured Query Language. See SQL; SQL Server 2005
style of Form Wizard forms, 594–596
style sheets. See presentation (layout) document (.xsl)
Sub statement, 947, 1007–1009
Subdatasheet menu, 388
subdatasheet properties
about, 178
performance with large tables, 179
Subdatasheet Expanded property, 180, 460
Subdatasheet Height property, 180, 460
subdatasheets, 387–390
defining
for complex queries, 458–462
subform for, 710–713
expanding, 387–390, 461
opening and filtering, 407
properties
about, 178
performance with large tables, 179
Subdatasheet Expanded property, 180, 460
Subdatasheet Height property, 180, 460
subfolders as trusted location, 37–38
subforms, 522–523
automatic linking to record source, 706
defined, 560
embedded, 692–713
creating, 703–706
creating main form, 707–710
defining subdatasheet subform, 710–713
designating main form source, 706–707
designing innermost first, 696–701
displaying complex information with, 1577
editing controls in inner forms, 709
setting up first-level subform, 701–702
specifying query data source for, 693–696
uses for, 692–693
embedding linked PivotChart in, 730, 733–734
illustrated, 561
linking
to form with filter, 1098–1099
records between forms and, 548
polishing design of, 698–700
rules for referencing, 920–921
situations impractical for using, 921
sizing controls in Form view, 704
subreports vs., 851
triggering data task from related, 1105–1109
using inDatasheet view, 701
viewing in Continuous Forms view, 700–701
submenus
Bitmap Image Object, 534
view by, 76
viewing categories of, 72
subqueries
correlated, A39, A66, A67
knowledge of SQL needed to define, A33
providing search criteria from underlying record source, 1093
testing existence of row in, A38, A39
Subquery clause, A64–A67
subreports, 851–859
building query for, 855
designing, 855–857
embedding, 741–744, 857–859
repeating report headers on, 851–854
rules for referencing, 920–921
subroutines
about, 1005
Call statement to transfer control to, 1017
declaring, 1007–1009
defining as method, 1005
Subtotal button, 475
Sum control, 787, 788
Sum function
about, 437
returning Null then converted to zero, 446–447
summary lists, 1094–1095
Summary Options dialog box, 781
sunken effect for text box controls, 596–597, 610
Surface Area Configuration Tool, 1336, 1337
switchboard forms, 1305–1310
checking for duplicate keyboard shortcuts, 1305–1306
command buttons on sample, 533–536, 537
designing, 1306–1310
function of, 560
Switchboard Manager, 1306–1310
building additional switchboard pages, 1307–1308
illustrated, 1308
starting, 1307
SwitchboardSample form, 1307

synchronizing
   between Access and Visual Basic, 950
   changes in SharePoint Services after working offline, 1230–1233
   resolving changes, 1231
related forms with macro, 924–928
two forms with class event, 1101–1104

syntax
append values queries, 1519–1520
assigning object variable with Set statement, 991–993
BETWEEN predicate, A35
Call statement, 1017
calling functions, 1542
class modules
   Property Get procedure, 1010
   Property Let procedure, 1012
   Property Set procedure, 1014
Column-Name clause, A35
comparison predicate, A37
declaring variables and constants, 965–978
Const statement, 965
Dim statement, 966–969
Enum statement, 969–970
Event statement, 971–972
Private statement, 972–973
Public statement, 973–974
ReDim statement, 974–975
Static statement, 976
Type statement, 977–978
DELETE statement, A72
Do...Loop statement, 1018
DoCmd object, 1026
domain functions, 1057
executing Access commands, 1027–1028
EXISTS predicate, A38
Expression clause, A39
For...Next statement, 1019
For Each...Next statement, 1019
FROM clause, A41–A42
Function statement, 1006–1007
GoTo statement, 1020–1021
GROUP BY clause, A44
HAVING clause, A45
If...Then...Else statement, 1021
ImportXML command, 1256
IN clause, A46–A47
IN predicate, A47
input mask, 171
INSERT statement, A73
LIKE predicate, A48
LoadCustomUI method, 1285
NULL predicate, A50
On Error statement, 1029
Open method of ADO recordset, 1001
OpenRecordset method, 994
ORDER BY clause, A50
PARAMETERS declaration, A52
quantified predicate, A54
RaiseEvent statement, 1022
Search-Condition clause, A55
SELECT...INTO statement, A75–A76
Select Case statement, 1023
SELECT statement, A57–A58
Stop statement, 1024
Sub statement, 1007–1009
Subquery clause, A64
temporary variables, 909
text table-valued function, 1544
transaction batching, 1535
TRANSFORM statement, A67
UNION query operator, A68
UPDATE statement, A77
variants for SELECT statement and action queries, A34
WHERE clause, A70
While...Wend statement, 1025
With...End statement, 1025
System Button Face property, 647
system colors, 647
System Configuration Check page (Microsoft SQL Server Installation Wizard), 1351–1352
system functions, A90–A91
system objects
displaying in Navigation Pane, 1267
recommended settings for, 1269
system tables
displaying in Navigation Pane, 1267
protecting, 1267, 1269

T

Tab controls, 719–723
   about, 530
   controlling tabbing on multiple-page form, 1080–1082
   property settings for, 723
   setting Page Index property, 721
   working with, 720–722
Tab Index property, 663
Tab key, 393
tab order for form controls, 662–663
Table Analyzer Wizard, 234–240
   choosing recommendations by, 236
   creating new query for modified table, 238–239
   eliminating duplicate lookup values, 238
   final page of, 239
opening pages of, 235
selecting table to analyze, 235–236
table definitions
  limitations on changes to, 205
  updating with AutoCorrect smart tag, 233
Table Design button, 155, 1458
table templates, 151–153, 1260–1265
  about, 1260–1261
  adding field to, 1261–1264
  creating and modifying, 153
  maximum length of text fields in, 1263
  modifying field in, 1264–1265
  types of, 152–153
Table Templates command, 153–154
Table window, 107–109
Table Wizard, 153
TableDefs collection, 984
tables. See also designing, tables; fields; relationships, between tables
  about, 99
  accessing shortcut menu commands for, 106–107
  appending
    data from other, 502–507
    rows with INSERT statement, A73–A75
  applying filters to data, 178
  avoiding outer joins between two, 185
  basing forms on queries of multiple, 686–691
  before modifying design of, 204–205
  creating
    quick create form from, 590–593
    quick datasheets form, 592–593
    snapshot, A31
    with template, 151–155
  update queries with multiple, 493–495
Datasheet view for, 109–110
deleting, 209–210
Design view for, 107–108
designating as embedded subform source, 706–707
designing, 142
  concept for, A17
    from subject worksheets, A16
displaying list of, 105–106
designing in SQL Server, 134–135
displaying all in field list, 563–564
displaying all in field view, 563–566
displaying all in table, 565–566
displaying all in view, 563–566
designing data entry forms, 156–157
deeper, 225
defining, 156–157
deleting, 225
displaying all in field list, 563–564
displaying all in field view, 563–566
displaying all in table, 565–566
displaying all in view, 563–566
editing on one side of join, 419
inserting in, 220–222
moving in, 217–220
omitting embedded spaces in names, 159, 216
selecting all, 352, 353
selecting from multiple, 778
fully qualifying names of fields and, 372
function of, 4
generating with make-table queries, 483, 495–502
importing
  source data into SharePoint database, 1187–1188
  from XML file, 1255–1256
input masks for data, 170–174
integrity checks in design of, 413
limitations of, 201
linked
  indicator for SharePoint Services, 1193
  modifying, 302–303
  with other Access database table, 295–298
unlinking, 303
using, 1320–1328
looking up values with combo box, 602–604
make-table queries, A75–A76
making backup copies of, 206–207
matching relationships unnecessary for joined, 416
modifying imported, 292
MSys system, 1267
normalizing data for joined, 414
opening in Design view, 155–156, 188
primary keys for, 174–175
printing definitions of, 199–200
project
  about, 133–135
  adding column definitions, 1475–1477
  adding with queries, 1495–1496
  creating in Design view, 1457–1459
defining relationships with database diagrams, 1485–1488
illustrating relationships and specifying joins for, 1500–1503
indexes in, 1471–1475
overview, 1447
setting design options, 1488–1490
relationships
  between, 181–188
to other Access objects, 100–101
to queries and forms, 560
relinking when going back online, 1232–1233
renaming, 211–212
tables, continued
  reversing changes to design, 234
  saving, 151
  searching for and filtering data in, 405–412
  selecting for inner joins, 415
  separating names of SQL fields and, 373
  setting datasheet format for in Datasheet view, 1145
  setting design options for, 191–195
  similarity of SharePoint lists and Access, 1169
  single-field indexes for, 188–189
  storing calculated value in, 1114
  subdatasheet property settings for, 178, 179, 180
  switching views with buttons or tabs, 109
  testing
    for related records when deleting record, 1074–1075
    validation rules for, 382–384
  using Find Unmatched Query Wizard with, 433
  USysRibbons, 1266–1269
  validation rules for, 175–178
  viewing relationships defined for, 187
  working with Visual FoxPro, 268

Tables And Related Views category (Navigation Pane), 49–52
  adding groups to, 57
  filtering objects in, 52–53
  groups included in, 57
  maximizing search for objects from, 82
  switching to, 49–50
  unable to reorder display, 61
  Unrelated Objects category in, 51–52

Tables object type, 48
  table-valued functions, 1493
tabs. See also contextual tabs; tab controls
  Create, 24, 42–43
  Database Tools, 24, 44–45
  displaying or hiding document, 85–86
  External Data, 24, 43–44
    about, 24, 43–44
    illustrated, 43, 261
  import and export commands on, 261, 1183
  SharePoint List button on, 1183, 1184
  Home, 24, 42
  main Ribbon, 41, 104
  Ribbon contextual, 41
Tabular button, 800–801
tabular control layouts
  converting, 798–800, 801
  defined, 626, 797
  removing, 632–635, 800
tag members, 1131–1134
tags
  browser rendering of, 1131
  common HTML coding, 1129–1131
  creating members for, 1131–1134
  defined, 1128
  members of commonly used, 1133
  XML, 1236, 1238, 1240, 1243
tasks
  analyzing application's, A7–A10
  automating complex, 1105–1114
    calculating stored value, 1114
    linking to related task, 1098–1099, 1109–1114
    triggering data task from related form, 1105–1109
  charting flow of, A4
  completing design worksheet for, A9, A10, A12
  data as output of, A11
  identifying application, A4
  organizing, A11–A13
  relationships among database, A13
  selecting data to perform, A11

Tasks template, 152
TCP (Transmission Control Protocol), 1137
TCP/IP (Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol), 1137
templates
  creating
    custom default, 195–199
    database with, 142–147
    for reports outputting to HTML, 1151–1152
    SharePoint list from Access using existing, 1199–1203
  defining for form, 682–683
  downloading online, 145–147
  exporting report with, 1152–1154
  HTML
    customizing data output with, 1147
    designing and using, 1148–1151
    modifying XML view files of, 153
    preserving sunken text box control effect, 610
    renaming default as Normal, 682
    saving in Windows Vista, 197
    selecting database, 143–145
  table, 151–155, 1260–1265
    about, 1260–1261
    adding field to, 1261–1264
    creating and modifying, 153
    modifying field in, 1264–1265
    types of, 152–153
  Table Wizard replaced with table, 153
  tokens for HTML, 1149
  used for IssuesSample accdb database, 54
temporary variables
  about, 907
  compatibility of .mdb databases with, 910
  creating, 908–909
macro actions using, A117
passing information between linked forms with, 934–935
referencing in macros, 991
removing, 991
removing and deleting, 909–910
sample macro using, 933–934
syntax for, 909
TempVars collection, 991, A117

~testing
application design, A6
code for related records when deleting record, 1074–1075
conditions using macro actions, A107–A108
custom Ribbon, 1270, 1272–1273
data updates with select queries, 486
database in runtime mode, 1329
in-line functions, 1516–1517
macros, 894–895
Null values with macro, 927
rows
affected by delete queries, 507–510
existence in subquery, A38, A39
table validation rules, 382–384
text stored procedure variables, 1531, 1532
text
changing maximum length of, 230–231
defining Lookup properties for, 353
embedding with double quotation marks, 653
encoding options for exported, 1248, 1249
formatting properties for, 655–656
report grouping options for, 818
text box controls
activating Date Picker for, 727
placing on form design grid, 578–579
resizing in Layout view, 797–798
sunken effect for, 596–597
text boxes
changing to combo box manually, 602
conditional formatting of, 716
duplicate names for report fields and, 836
formatting properties for data display, 651–661
overlaying to display filtered data, 1096
setting properties for input form, 584–585
sizing controls for reports, 772–773
width unadjusted with Size To Fit command, 614

Text data type
about, 158–159
converting, 226
formatting characters for, 655–656
text editor, 1524–1545
backing up text queries, 1526
building text scalar function, 1541–1543
building text stored procedure, 1526–1541
about, 1526–1527
adding control-of-flow statements, 1531–1535
grouping multiple statements with transactions, 1535–1541
re-creating stored procedure from query designer, 1529–1530
starting new procedure, 1527–1529
building text table-valued function, 1543–1545
text expressions, 362–364
text fields
maximum length in table templates, 1263
SharePoint’s conversion of line characters in, 1218
showing Null value in, 657
text files, 282–291
automating import specification of fixed-width, 291
data setup for fixed-width, 284–285
delimited or fixed-width, 282
exporting data to, A81
fixing errors in imported, 290
importing, 285–290
linking to Access databases, 300–301
preparing to import, 282
setting up delimited data, 283–284
text scalar functions, 1541–1543
text stored procedures, 1526–1541
about, 1526–1527
adding control-of-flow statements, 1531–1535
comment blocks in, 1528
declaring variables, 1531–1532
grouping multiple statements with transactions, 1535–1541
starting new, 1527–1529
testing variables in, 1531, 1532
text strings, concatenating, 841–842
text table-valued function, 1543–1545
themes applied on forms, 559, 596, 692
thickness, control line, 583–584
thousands separator character (comma), 653
3-D object color, 565
time. See also Date/Time data type
cautions building criteria on date and, 357
checking for overlapping, 1078–1080
filtering records for Append query by, 503–504
functions for date and, 375–376
prevented entry of values with input mask, 361
using in selection criteria, 356–357
timer detection, 882
titles
adding Report Wizard report, 782–783
entering in Group, Sort, And Total pane, 766–767
PivotChart, 480–481
To Grid button, 618
toggle buttons
  about, 526–527
  check boxes and option buttons vs., 606
  setting field’s status with, 605–607
Toggle Filter button, 402
tokens
  defined, 1149
  HTML template, 1149
toolbars. See Quick Access Toolbar
TOP clause, 1511
TOP keyword, A62
TOP n PERCENT clause, 1510, 1511, A65
Top Values property, 453–454
totals. See also totals queries
  calculating on expressions, 838
  counting total events with controls, 804–807
  creating report’s grand, 839–840
  filtering
    groups of totals, 441–442
    records before grouping, 440–441
  options in Group, Sort, And Total pane for, 766
  partitioning sales, 447–449
  running, 845–848
Totals button, 435
Totals Fields drop zone, 474
totals queries, 435–449
  defining aggregate functions in, 435–436, 437
  filtering
    before grouping records with, 440–441
    groups of totals after calculating, 441–442
  partitioning data in, 447
  sorting sequence of, 439
  unable to change data in, 468
  uses for, 435
tracking AutoCorrect information for names, 208
transactions, defined, 12
Transact-SQL
  about, 1491
  creating text queries with, 1525
  finding list of reserved words for, 1460
  grouping multiple statements with transactions, 1535–1541
TRANSFORM clauses, A34
TRANSFORM statement, A67–A68
Transmission Control Protocol (TCP), 1137
Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol (TCP/IP), 1137, 1138
trapping
  errors
    event properties for, 882
    in macros, 910–915
    in Visual Basic, 1028–1030
    keyboard and mouse events, 876–878
troubleshooting
  Access won’t use ODBC for all file types, 268
  action queries, 512–514
  can’t see column properties or create lookups in SQL Server 7.0, 1470
  can’t set defined default value in date/time field, 1063
  cautions setting VB breakpoints, 957
  control validation rules, 670
  ensuring correct table used in query designer, 415
  errors authenticating SQL Server 2005 Express Edition with Windows Vista, 258
  errors creating SQL Server database, 1452, 1457
  extra table rows in Datasheet view, 111
  incomplete macro actions, 892
  link to User Information List deleted, 1194
  Maximize/Minimize buttons not in windows, 109
  missing records in imported SharePoint list, 1191
  missing Web page graphic or background, 1150
  project forms and reports unsupported in Layout view, 1552
  unable to change published database, 1224
  undoing deleted table relationships, 211
TrueType (TT) fonts, 649
truncated data warning message, 230
Trust Center, 34–35
  enabling
    content by defining trusted locations, 39–40
    untrusted database, 35–36
  illustrated, 37, 96
  opening, 36, 96
  selecting privacy options, 38–39
trusted actions, A101
trusted connection for SQL Server databases, 1450–1451
trusted locations
  defining, 39–40
  designating, 37–38
  downloading SharePoint databases to, 1225
  illustrated, 40
  placing sample files to, 23, 103
trusted macros, 916
trusted publishers, 37
Trustworthy Computing, 34
T-SQL. See Transact-SQL
TT (TrueType) fonts, 649
turning on/off. See disabling; enabling
twips, 1120
Two Pages button, 124, 125
Type statement, 977–978
U
UI. See user interface (UI)
Unassigned Objects group
display rules for, 61–63
hiding in Navigation Pane, 67, 68, 74
unbound, 566
UNC (Universal Naming Convention) path name, 1323
underscore (_),
default placeholder character, 171
using names in brackets with embedded, 989
wildcard character for project file, A49
undocking
Field List window, 122
Visual Basic Editor windows, 946
undoing
deleted relationships between tables, 211
deletions, 210
multiple design changes, 234
rows replaced in error, 224
Unicode UTF-8 vs. UTF-16, 1148
union queries, 463–468
building in SQL view, 463–468
illustrated, 468
updates disallowed for, 469
using column names in ORDER BY clause of, A52, A63, A69
viewing in Datasheet view, 465
UNION query operator, A68–A70
unique identifiers, A20–A21
unique indexes
creating, 1473
ignoring duplicate key for, 1474
Unique Records property, 454–458
Unique Values property, 454–458, 469
units of measure for form grid, 566
Universal Naming Convention (UNC) path name, 1323
unlinking linked tables, 303
unmatched (≠) values in queries, 1503, A42
unmatched records, 426–430, 432–434
Unrelated Objects category, 51–52
Unset Database Password dialog box, 1335
untrusted locations, 1225
untrusted macros. See also trusted macros
updatable recordsets, 1354–1555
update queries, 486–495
backing up data before using, 489
command on Design contextual tab for, 488
confirmation dialog boxes with, 489, 491
converting select query to, 488
defined, 485
defining generic parameters for, 495
definitions in, 489
icon for, 490
illustrated, 488
multiple tables or queries creating, 493–495
running, 489–491

updating multiple fields, 491–493
using select query to test data updates, 486–487
UPDATE statement, A77–A78
Update Status Bar Text Everywhere ContactID Is Used
command, 233
updates for Microsoft Office system, 97
updating
custom Ribbon elements, 1297–1299
data, A11
image path for photograph, 1070–1071
properties with AutoCorrect smart tag, 233
records
including primary key information when, 310
via e-mail collection, 308–309, 329–330
rows in ADO recordset, 1004
view conditions limiting, 1508
Upgrade tab (Microsoft Office dialog box), 1348, 1349
upgrading previous Microsoft Office version, 1347–1349
uppercase characters (>), 655
uprising applications to projects, 533
Use Access Special Keys check box (Access Options dialog box), 957
Use Control Wizards button, 602
Use Trusted Connection check box (Microsoft SQL Server Database Wizard), 1450–1451
Use Windows-Themed Controls On Forms option, 559, 596, 692
User Account Control, 197
User Information List, 1194
User Information tab (Microsoft Office dialog box), 1345–1346, 1348
user interface (UI), 19–97. See also Detail section; Navigation Pane; Ribbon
contextual tabs
adding built-in groups to, 1276–1279
Arrange, 564, 618
creating for custom Ribbon, 1274–1275
Design, 121–122, 184, 488, 509, 564
disabling unused, 1283–1284
found on Form Design Tools tab, 567
hidden when Navigation Pane collapsed, 739
Print Preview, 739
report, 761
Report Design Tools, 121–122, 761
Ribbon, 41, 104
setting focus to, 1301–1302
controlling display with macro actions, A113–A114
designing application prototype for, A5
dimmed objects in, 73–74
form navigation buttons and command icons, 540
Getting Started screen, 21–22, 102
modifying global settings, 87–97
user interface, continued

Navigation Pane, 24, 46
function of, 45–47
Object Type category of, 57, 82, 105–106, 114, 115
searching for database objects from, 78–82
Tables And Related Views category of, 49–52
width of, 47, 103
opening existing databases, 22–25
opening first time, 19–20
Quick Access Toolbar, 27–33
adding command from Ribbon to, 34
adding macros to, 30–31
adding separators between commands, 33
Customize category settings for, 28–29, 94
Database Tools tab, 24, 44–45
default and custom commands on, 27–30
illustrated, 28
removing items from, 28–29, 33, 34
restoring default settings for, 33
revising order of commands and macros on, 32
undo feature for, 210
Ribbon
adding built-in groups to tabs, 1276–1279
adding command to Quick Access Toolbar from, 34
building well-formed XML for, 1270–1271
collapsing, 45
customizing, 1266–1279, 1283–1302
going accustomed to, 21
illustrated, 24, 41
main tabs, 41
not used in Visual Basic Editor, 945
Search box, 553–554
single- vs. multiple-document, 83–86
status bar, 25
Trust Center, 34–35
user interface functions, A90–A91
using Microsoft Office Button, 24, 25–27
Visual Basic Editor, 945–950
Windows SharePoint Services, 1167–1168
adding columns to lists, 1175–1179
creating views, 1172–1175, 1191
editing lists, 1168–1172
Recycle Bin, 1179–1182, 1197
working with queries in Datasheet view, 384–386
user-defined data types, 1465
user-defined stored procedures, 1533
user-level security for .acdb files, 12
users
application design feedback from, A6
controlling form filtering and modifications by, 673–674
forms requiring input from, 524–525
making design changes on forms, 589
preventing use of window controls by, 675
restricting form views for, 670–671
USysRibbons table, 1266–1269
creating, 1266
displaying, 1266–1267
loading
custom Ribbons from, 1284–1285
during startup, 1267–1268
Ribbons into Access data projects, 1286

V
validating data. See also validation rules
check constraints for SQL Server, 1478–1480
with macros, 928–934
steps executed when, 929
types of invalid data, 928–929
using macro group, 929–934
using preset values, 935–938
in Visual Basic, 1071–1080
checking for overlapping data, 1078–1080
checking for possible duplicate names, 1071–1073
maintaining special unique value constraint, 1077–1080
testing for related records when deleting record, 1074–1075
verifying prerequisite before saving record, 1075–1077
Validation Rule property, 168, 670
validation rules
about, 7
action query violations of, 512
checking new field, 381–382
comparison symbols in, 169
type of control, 670
defining table, 175–178
type of sample table, 176
specifying for fields, 165, 168–170
testing new table, 382–384
unsupported in SharePoint Services, 1219
using Between, In, and Like comparison operators, 360–361
Validation Text box (Properties dialog box), 1472,
1474–1475
Validation Text property, 670
values
macro actions setting, A109
viewing list of valid property, 575
Var function, 437
variables
assigning object, 991–993
CurrentDb function to set database, 989
declaring for text stored procedures, 1531–1532
examining in Watch window for errors, 956–959
global, 961
temporary, 907–910
about, 907
compatibility of .mdb databases with, 910
creating, 908–909
macro example using, 933–934
passing information between linked forms with, 934–935
removing and deleting, 909–910
syntax for, 909
Visual Basic, 961–978
adding data-type prefix to name, 966
data types supported, 961–963
defining data type with data-typing characters, 962
defining scope of, 963–964
implicit/explicit data type definitions, 962–963
VBE. See Visual Basic Editor (VBE)
VBScript, 1128, 1138
versions
Access compatibility with earlier, 1338–1339
checking database, 1327
keeping installations of multiple Access, 1348–1349
required SQL Server software for projects, 1448
SQL modifications by earlier Access, A61
upgrading previous Microsoft Office, 1347–1349
vertical I-bar, 802–803
vertically
moving one or more controls, 621
selecting all controls, 588, 600
View By submenu (Navigation Pane), 76
View tab (Properties window), 1512–1513
viewing
complete list of macro actions, 892
data in forms, 539
filter icon in ScreenTip, 408
HTML behind Web page, 1128
hyperlinks, 397–398
list of valid property values, 575
module objects in database, 942–943
project table relationships in Diagram window, 1486
query data in various ways, 10–11
relationships defined for tables or queries, 187
reports in Print Preview, 736, 737–739
SQL Server table indexes, 1472
static Web pages, 1139–1140
trusted publishers, 37
views. See also Datasheet view; Design view; Form view;
Layout view
creating Windows SharePoint Services, 1172–1175,
1191
displaying properties for query, 1510–1513
formatting form properties to restrict user’s, 670–671
options for overlapping or tabbed document, 109
project
creating in query designer, 1495
reason for using, 1507–1508
working with as query, 1493
working with, 1507–1513
project file, 135
sorting and selecting Navigation Pane, 76–77
Views button, 110
Visual Basic (VB), 941–1124. See also Visual Basic Editor
(VBE)
assisting data entry, 1053–1071
filling in related data, 1053–1057
fixing e-mail hyperlink, 1061–1062
handling NotInList event, 1058–1061
providing graphical calendar, 1063–1068
working with linked photos, 1069–1071
automating complex tasks, 1105–1114
calculating stored value, 1114
linking to related task, 1090–1096, 1109–1114
triggering data task from related form, 1105–1109
automating data selection, 1082–1097
filtering one list with another, 1095–1097
multiple-selection list boxes, 1082–1086
providing custom query by form, 1086–1093
selecting from summary list, 1094–1095
automating reports, 1114–1124
drawing border on report, 1118–1121
dynamically filtering report on opening, 1121–1124
using up partial page of mailing labels, 1115–1118
automating XML import and export in, 1256–1260
class modules, 1009–1016
Property Get procedure, 1010–1012
Property Let procedure, 1012–1014
Property Set procedure, 1014–1016
understanding, 1009–1010
code disabled when downloaded to untrusted locations, 1225
coding routines in modules, 130
collections, objects, properties, and methods
assigning object variable, 991–993
object methods, 993–1005
object model hierarchies organizing, 978–987
referencing collections, objects, and properties, 987–989
referencing in variables created by macros, 991
setting database variable with CurrentDb function, 989
using exclamation points and periods in names, 989–990
Visual Basic, continued
controlling flow of statements, 1016–1026
   Call statement, 1017
   Do...Loop statement, 1017–1018
   For...Next statement, 1018–1019
   For Each...Next statement, 1019–1020
   GoTo statement, 1020–1021
   If...Then...Else statement, 1021–1022
   RaiseEvent statement, 1022–1023
   Select Case statement, 1023–1024
   Stop statement, 1024
   While...Wend statement, 1025
   With...End statement, 1025–1026
controlling tabbing on multiple-page form, 1080–1082
debugging, 951–960
   call stack, 959–960
   preventing, 1312, 1328
   setting breakpoints, 951–952, 957
   using Immediate window, 952–956
   working with Watch window, 956–959, 960
examples of complex code, 1030–1050
   examining all error codes, 1044–1050
   randomly loading data, 1030–1044
executing Access commands, 1027–1028
functions and subroutines, 1005–1000
   about, 1005
   Function statement, 1006–1007
   list of functions on companion CD, 371
Sub statement, 1007–1009
linking to data in other form or report, 1098–1094
   linking forms with filter, 1098–1099
   linking to report with filter, 1099–1101
   synchronizing two forms with class event, 1101–1104
macros
   converting to VB, 938–940
   equivalents for macro actions, 1028
   executing macro actions, 1026–1027
   using procedures instead of, 1052–1053
   using with VB, 890, 1052
modules, 942–944
   form and report, 944
   module objects, 942–943
relationship between Access and, 942, 950
resetting Page property value with, 833
trapping errors in, 1028–1030
validating complex data, 1071–1080
   checking for duplicate names, 1071–1073
   maintaining special unique value constraint, 1077–1080
   overlapping data checks, 1078–1080
   testing for related records when deleting record, 1074–1075
   verifying prerequisite before saving record, 1075–1077
variables and constants, 961–978
   data types supported, 961–963
   declaring, 965–978
   naming conventions for variables, 966
   scope of, 963–964
writing HTML from, 1154–1158
Visual Basic Editor (VBE)
   about, 942
   customizing in Options dialog box, 948
   illustrated, 945
   indenting VB coding, 948–949
opening
   with Build button in event property, 906
   and displaying modules in, 131–132
   setting database options in, 198, 199
   user interface for, 945–950, 1161
Visual Basic Scripting Edition (VBScript), 1128, 1158
Visual FoxPro
   importing data from, 266–270
   ODBC drivers required to import, 269
   specifying source for tables with IN clause, A46, A47
   working with tables in Access, 268
Visual FoxPro-to-Access data type conversions, 270
Visual Studio, 664, 1161
Visual Studio .NET, 1131, 1160–1161

W
W3C (World Wide Web Consortium), 1128
warning messages
   alerts for reserved words or function names, 159
   data conversion errors, 232
   InfoPath form, 335–336
   macro actions displaying, A115
   possible data truncation, 230
   security, 24, 25
   when deleting field definitions, 225
waste in single table design, A17–A19
Watch window
   deleting watched item after finishing, 960
   examining variables for errors in, 956–959
Web applications, 1127–1163
   creating in HTML, 1128–1135
   development tools required for, 1127–1128
   difficulties working with OLE objects, 1069
   dynamic Web pages, 1158–1161
   delivering dynamic query results, 1158–1160
   processing live data with HTML forms, 1160
   using ASP for fetching data on, 1158
   sharing data with SharePoint Services, 1161–1163
static HTML documents
  customizing appearance of, 1143–1148
designing and using HTML templates, 1148–1151
generating HTML page from Access report, 1151–1154
static Web pages
  understanding, 1137–1139
viewing, 1139–1140
XML for, 1135–1137
Web browsers. See also Internet Explorer
  allowing scripts to run on, 1245
configuring file to open after export in, 1185
connecting to Web servers using TCP/IP, 1137–1138
cross-browser issues, 1131
displaying HTML behind Web page, 1128
opening HTML files after export complete, 1147
viewing columns of custom SharePoint list in, 1205
Web protocols used by, 1138
web packages (.htm), 1237, 1243–1245
Web pages. See also Web sites
  applying tags to complex HTML, 1133–1134
  browsers’ rendering of HTML tags, 1131
dynamic, 1158–1161
delivering dynamic query results, 1158–1160
processing live data with HTML forms, 1160
using ASP for fetching data on, 1158
generating from Access report, 1151–1154
HTML, editing, 1134–1135
missing graphic or background on, 1150
opening from hyperlink, 398–399
refreshing static, 1140
static
  understanding, 1137–1139
viewing, 1139–1140
structure of HTML, 1128
using color names and codes on, A93
Web Parts, 1162, 1165–1166
Web sites
  Microsoft Office Live, 1161–1162, 1166
Windows SharePoint Services
  about sample, 1167–1168
  gaining access to, 1166
  illustrated, 1167
  relinking list to new, 1197
well-formed XML
  about, 1236–1237
  building for custom Ribbon form, 1270–1271
WHERE clause
  HAVING clause vs., A45
overview, A70–A71
uses of, 464
While...Wend statement, 1025
width
  adjusting report field’s, 802, 804
  choosing form, 565
  Navigation Pane’s, 47, 103
wildcards
  characters for LIKE predicate, A48–A49
  searching data using, A06
  used with LIKE comparison operator, 169
windows. See also Immediate window
  changing font size for Query, 467
closing without Close button, 675
Filter By Form, 555
Form, 114–121
inserting new rows in Index, 190
Layout view for Report, 125–127
Macro, 890–893
Maximize/Minimize buttons for, 108, 109, 675
moving between parts of Design view, 222
PivotTable design, 474
pop-up forms, 523–524
preventing use of controls for, 675
previewing Report, 124–125
Relationships, 187–188
Report view for Report, 127–128
Table, 107–109
unlocking Visual Basic Editor, 946
Visual Basic Editor, 945
Watch, 956–959, 960
Windows Internet Explorer. See Internet Explorer
Windows SharePoint Services (version 3), 1161–1163, 1165–1233
about, 1161–1162, 1165–1166
adding columns to lists, 1175–1179
creating SharePoint list from within Access, 1198–1207
  adding record to table, 1200–1201
  creating custom list, 1203–1207
  using existing list template, 1199–1203
creating views, 1172–1175, 1191
DAPs vs., 14
editing data in lists, 1168–1172
exporting Access data to, 1182–1186
exporting Access data to, 1182–1186
gaining access to sites using, 1166
illustrated, 1167
importing list to Access from, 1186–1191
indicator for linked tables, 1193
linking list to Access, 1191–1195
lists in, 216
Microsoft Office integration with, 1162–1163
migrating database to SharePoint site, 1207–1233
about, 1207–1208
opening database from SharePoint, 1223–1226
steps to move database, 1212–1219
synchronizing changes after working offline, 1230–1233
ways SharePoint handles migrated data, 1218–1219
working offline, 1226–1229
Windows SharePoint Services, continued
publishing database to SharePoint site, 1208–1211
moving vs., 1207
publishing changes to migrated database, 1217
Recycle Bin, 1179–1182, 1197
referential integrity not enforced by, 1195
republishing after changing database, 1207, 1219–1222
sample database using, 1166
sharing with, 13
user interface for, 1167–1168
using options for linked lists, 1196–1198
viewing hidden columns in SharePoint lists, 1206, 1219
Web Parts, 1162, 1165–1166
Windows SharePoint Services Web sites
about sample, 1167–1168
gaining access to, 1166
illustrated, 1167
relinking list to new, 1197
Windows Vista
Clipboard in, 395
disabling User Account Control and saving database in
template folder, 197
errors authenticating SQL Server 2005 Express Edition
with, 258
as event-driven operating system, 867–868
MSDE unsupported in, 1494
With...End statement, 1025–1026
WITHOWNERACCESSOPTION clauses, A34, A60
Word mail merge documents, A81–A82
word processors
exporting data to mail merge document, A81–A82
reasons to transfer data to Access from, 15–17
Work Offline button, 1227, 1228
Work Online button, 1230, 1231
workflow for SharePoint Services, 1197
working offline with SharePoint database, 1226–1229
illustrated, 1228
pencil icon displayed next to changed records, 1229
synchronizing changes in data after, 1230–1233
worksheets
application design
subjects, A14, A15, A16
tasks, A9, A10, A12
World Wide Web. See also Web applications; Web browsers; Web pages
about, 1127
development tools required for, 1127–1128
protocols and, 1138
World Wide Web Consortium (W3C), 1128, 1236
WriteHTML function, 1154–1156
X
XML (Extensible Markup Language), 1235–1279
about, 1133–1137, 1235, 1236
automating import and export in Visual Basic, 1256–1260
customizing Ribbon, 1266–1279
adding built-in groups to tabs, 1276–1279
building well-formed XML for, 1270–1271
code listing for, 1292–1294
creating form for testing Ribbon, 1270
creating tabs, 1274–1275
creating USysRibbons table, 1266–1269
creating VBA callbacks, 1296–1297
displaying errors, 1274
dynamically updating elements, 1297–1299
explanation of code listing, 1294–1296
hiding existing Ribbon elements, 1271–1272
hiding options on Microsoft Office Button,
1300–1301
loading images into custom controls, 1299–1300
setting focus to tab, 1301–1302
testing, 1272–1273
exporting from Access, 1245–1254
as Active Server Page, 1249, 1250
forms and reports, 1250–1254
tables and queries, 1246–1250
field names with spaces in, 1263
file types for, 1237–1245
about, 1237
data documents (.xml), 1237, 1238–1239
presentation documents (.xsl), 1237, 1241–1243
presentation layout extension documents (.xst), 1237, 1243
schema documents (.xsd), 1237, 1239–1241
web packages (.htm), 1237, 1243–1245
importing XML files into Access, 1254–1256
loading custom Ribbon, 1284–1287
modifying table templates, 1260–1265
modifying template XML view files, 153
using in Access, 1136–1137
well-formed, 1236–1237
.xml data documents
about, 1237
embedding schema and presentation information in,
1237
example of, 1238–1239
XML File button, 1246
XOR operator
expressing in query designer, A55
truth tables for, A56
.xsd files
  importing into Access, 1255
  schema documents as, 1237, 1239–1241
.xsl files
  about, 1237, 1241–1243
  Report ML version of, 1250, 1252
.xss file type, 1237, 1243

Y
Yes/No data type
  about, 158, 160
  converting, 229
  Format property settings for, 660

Z
zero-length
  strings, 166
Zip fields, 275
Zoom button, 737, 738, 750
Zoom window
  entering expressions in, 362–363
  examining macros in, 900